# SEMICLASSICAL LIMIT OF GROSS-PITAEVSKII EQUATION WITH DIRICHLET BOUNDARY CONDITION 

GUILONG GUI AND PING ZHANG


#### Abstract

In this paper, we justify the semiclassical limit of Gross-Pitaevskii equation with Dirichlet boundary condition on the 3-D upper space under the assumption that the leading order terms to both initial amplitude and initial phase function are sufficiently small in some high enough Sobolev norms. We remark that the main difficulty of the proof lies in the fact that the boundary layer appears in the leading order terms of the amplitude functions and the gradient of the phase functions to the WKB expansions of the solutions. In particular, we partially solved the open question proposed in $[6,18]$ concerning the semiclassical limit of Gross-Pitaevskii equation with Dirichlet boundary condition.


Keywords: Semiclassical limit, Schrödinger equation, Boundary layer, Successive complementary expansion method
AMS Subject Classification (2000): 35Q40, 35Q55.

## 1. Introduction

We consider here the semiclassical limit of Gross-Pitaevskii equation (GP equation for short) with the Dirichlet boundary condition in the three-dimensional upper space $\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}$ :

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
i \varepsilon \partial_{t} \Psi^{\varepsilon}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \Delta \Psi^{\varepsilon}-\left(\left|\Psi^{\varepsilon}\right|^{2}-1\right) \Psi^{\varepsilon}=0, \quad(t, x) \in \mathbb{R}_{+} \times \mathbb{R}_{+}^{3},  \tag{1.1}\\
\left.\Psi^{\varepsilon}\right|_{z=0}=1,\left.\quad \Psi^{\varepsilon}\right|_{t=0}=a_{0}^{\varepsilon} \exp \left(i \frac{\varphi_{0}^{\varepsilon}}{\varepsilon}\right),
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $x=(y, z) \in \mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{h}}^{2} \times \mathbb{R}_{+}, a_{0}^{\varepsilon} \geq 0$ and $\varphi_{0}^{\varepsilon}$ are real-valued functions. We assume that

$$
\begin{align*}
& a_{0}^{\varepsilon}=a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}+\sum_{j=0}^{m+2} \varepsilon^{j} a_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} R_{a, 0}^{\varepsilon} \quad \text { with } \quad \lim _{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0}\left\|R_{a, 0}^{\varepsilon}\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-2 m-5}}=0, \\
& \varphi_{0}^{\varepsilon}=\varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}+\sum_{j=0}^{m+2} \varepsilon^{j} \varphi_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} R_{\varphi, 0}^{\varepsilon} \quad \text { with } \quad \lim _{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0}\left\|\nabla R_{\varphi, 0}^{\varepsilon}\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-2 m-5}}=0, \tag{1.2}
\end{align*}
$$

for some $s_{0}$ large enough. We also impose the following condition at infinity:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi^{\varepsilon}(t, x) \rightarrow e^{\frac{i}{\varepsilon}\left(u^{\infty} \cdot x-\frac{t}{2}\left|u^{\infty}\right|^{2}\right)} \quad \text { as } \quad|x| \rightarrow+\infty \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

In what follows, we assume that the constant vector $u^{\infty}=0$ for simplicity.
The motivation for us to study the problem (1.1) comes from many interesting issues concerning a superfluid passing an obstacle (see for example [ $9,12,18]$ ). Classical Madelung transform introduces two real variables: $a^{\varepsilon} \geq 0$ and $\varphi^{\varepsilon}$ so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi^{\varepsilon}=a^{\varepsilon} \exp \left(i \frac{\varphi^{\varepsilon}}{\varepsilon}\right) \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

By substituting (1.4) into (1.1) and separating the real and imaginary parts, we find

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\partial_{t} a^{\varepsilon}+\nabla \varphi^{\varepsilon} \cdot \nabla a^{\varepsilon}+\frac{1}{2} a^{\varepsilon} \Delta \varphi^{\varepsilon}=0, \quad(t, x) \in \mathbb{R}_{+} \times \mathbb{R}_{+}^{3},  \tag{1.5}\\
a^{\varepsilon}\left(\partial_{t} \varphi^{\varepsilon}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi^{\varepsilon}\right|^{2}+\left(a^{\varepsilon}\right)^{2}-1\right)=\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \Delta a^{\varepsilon},
\end{array}\right.
$$

Date: November 11, 2019.
with the initial-boundary conditions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.a^{\varepsilon}\right|_{z=0}=1,\left.\quad \varphi^{\varepsilon}\right|_{z=0}=0, \quad a^{\varepsilon} \rightarrow 1 \quad \text { as } \quad|x| \rightarrow \infty \quad \text { and }\left.\quad a^{\varepsilon}\right|_{t=0}=a_{0}^{\varepsilon},\left.\quad \varphi^{\varepsilon}\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{0}^{\varepsilon} \tag{1.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

We denote $\rho^{\varepsilon} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left(a^{\varepsilon}\right)^{2}$ and $\rho^{\varepsilon} u^{\varepsilon} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \rho^{\varepsilon} \nabla \varphi^{\varepsilon}$, which corresponds to the quantum density and momentum respectively in quantum mechanics (see [14] for instance). This allows to rewrite (1.5-1.6) as the following hydrodynamical system:

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\partial_{t} \rho^{\varepsilon}+\nabla \cdot\left(\rho^{\varepsilon} u^{\varepsilon}\right)=0  \tag{1.7}\\
\rho^{\varepsilon}\left(\partial_{t} u^{\varepsilon}+u^{\varepsilon} \cdot \nabla u^{\varepsilon}\right)+\nabla p\left(\rho^{\varepsilon}\right)=\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \rho^{\varepsilon} \nabla\left(\frac{\Delta \sqrt{\rho^{\varepsilon}}}{\sqrt{\rho^{\varepsilon}}}\right),
\end{array}\right.
$$

with the initial-boundary conditions

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\left.\rho^{\varepsilon}\right|_{z=0}=1,\left.\quad \varphi^{\varepsilon}\right|_{z=0}=0 \quad \text { and } \quad \rho^{\varepsilon} \rightarrow 1 \text { as }|x| \rightarrow \infty  \tag{1.8}\\
\left.\rho^{\varepsilon}\right|_{t=0}=\left(a_{0}^{\varepsilon}\right)^{2},\left.\quad u^{\varepsilon}\right|_{t=0}=\nabla \varphi_{0}^{\varepsilon},
\end{array}\right.
$$

and the pressure law $p\left(\rho^{\varepsilon}\right)=\frac{1}{2}\left(\rho^{\varepsilon}\right)^{2}$.
The system (1.7) is called quantum compressible Euler system, and the right hand-side of the $u^{\varepsilon}$ equation in (1.7) is called quantum pressure. As $\varepsilon$ approaches to 0 , the quantum pressure is formally negligible and the system (1.7-1.8) approaches to the classical compressible Euler equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\partial_{t} \rho+\nabla \cdot(\rho u)=0  \tag{1.9}\\
\rho\left(\partial_{t} u+u \cdot \nabla u\right)+\nabla p(\rho)=0
\end{array}\right.
$$

with the initial-boundary conditions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{+\infty} u \cdot \mathbf{n} d z=0, \quad \rho \rightarrow 1 \quad \text { as } \quad|x| \rightarrow \infty \quad \text { and }\left.\quad \rho\right|_{t=0}=\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)^{2},\left.\quad u\right|_{t=0}=\nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}} \tag{1.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

The justification of the above formal limit has attracted the interests by many authors. In the whole space case, Gérard [10] proved the limit with analytical initial data. Grenier [11] solved the limit problem before the formation of singularity in the limit system with initial data in Sobolev spaces. The main idea in [11] is to use the symmetrizer of the limit system (1.9) to get $H^{s}$ energy estimates which are uniform in $\varepsilon$ for a singularly perturbed system. Nevertheless this method does not work for the semiclassical limit of Schrödinger-Poisson equations, as the resulting limit system is not a symmetric hyperbolic one. Motivated by the work of Brenier [4], where the author proved the local-in time convergence of the scaled Vlasov-Poisson equations to the incompressible Euler equations, the second author [20] used the Wigner measure approach (see $[16,22]$ ) to study the semiclassical limit of SchrödingerPoisson equation (see [21] for more general nonlinearity).

In order to solve the semiclassical limit of GP equation in the exterior domain with Neumann boundary condition (which corresponds to the non-slip boundary condition $u \cdot \mathbf{n}=0$ for the limit system (1.9)), where we can not use Wigner transform, the authors [15] simplified the modulated energy functional in [20,21] and proved that
$\left|\Psi^{\varepsilon}\right|^{2}-\rho \rightarrow 0 \quad$ in $\quad L^{\infty}(] 0, T\left[; L^{2}\right) \quad$ and $\quad \varepsilon \operatorname{Im}\left(\bar{\Psi}^{\varepsilon} \nabla \Psi^{\varepsilon}\right)-\rho u \rightarrow 0 \quad$ in $\quad L^{\infty}(] 0, T\left[; L_{\text {loc }}^{1}\right)$,
before the formation of singularity in the limit system. This idea has been used and extended by the authors in $[1,19]$. Interested readers may check $[2,6]$ for the so-called supercritical geometric optics where they allow $p^{\prime}(0)=0$ for the pressure function in (1.9). One may also check the books [5,22] and references therein for more information in this context.

For the problem (1.1), by comparing (1.8) with (1.10), we find that the boundary condition $\left.\rho^{\varepsilon}\right|_{z=0}=1$ in (1.8) does not match the boundary condition for $\rho$ in (1.10) at the boundary $\{z=0\}$, where we do not have any restriction on $\rho$. This results in a strong boundary layer
near the boundary $\{z=0\}$. In fact, if we formally seek for WKB expansions $\Psi^{\varepsilon}=a^{\varepsilon} \exp \left(i \frac{\varphi^{\varepsilon}}{\varepsilon}\right)$ of the form

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
a^{\varepsilon}(t, x)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k}\left(a_{k}(t, y, z)+A_{k}(t, y, Z)\right)  \tag{1.11}\\
\varphi^{\varepsilon}(t, x)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k}\left(\varphi_{k}(t, y, z)+\Phi_{k}(t, y, Z)\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

we shall find below that $\Phi_{0} \equiv 0$, and $a_{0}, a_{k}, A_{k}, \varphi_{k}, \Phi_{k}$ with $k=1,2,3, \ldots$ are non-trivial. In this case, we have $\nabla u^{\varepsilon}=\nabla^{2} \varphi^{\varepsilon} \sim O\left(\frac{1}{\varepsilon}\right)$ and $\nabla a^{\varepsilon} \sim O\left(\frac{1}{\varepsilon}\right)$. In some sense, this phenomena has some similarity with the strong boundary layer caused by vanishing viscosity of incompressible Navier-Stokes system to Euler system (see [17]). Lately there are a lot of progresses on this topic (see for instance $[8,13]$ and the references therein).

On the other hand, for the case of the semiclassical limit of GP equation with the Neumann boundary condition in $\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}$, that is, $\left.\partial_{z} \Psi^{\varepsilon}\right|_{\partial \mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}=0$, Chiron and Rousset [6] justified the validity of the WKB expansions on some finite time interval $[0, T]$. We remark that in this case, the boundary layer profiles $A_{0}=\Phi_{0}=\Phi_{1} \equiv 0$ in (1.11), which implies $\nabla u^{\varepsilon} \sim O(1)$ and $\nabla a^{\varepsilon} \sim$ $O(1)$. This weak boundary layer plays a key role in the study of the nonlinear stability to the WKB expansions. Nevertheless, the semiclassical limit of nonlinear Schrödinger equation with Dirichlet boundary condition was left open in $[6,18]$.

In this paper, we are going to answer this question proposed in $[6,18]$ under the condition that both $a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1$ and $\nabla \varphi_{0}$ are sufficiently small in some regular enough Sobolev space.

Let us end this introduction by some notations that will be used in all that follows.
For operators $A, B$, we denote $[A ; B]=A B-B A$ to be the commutator of $A$ and $B$. For $a \lesssim b$, we mean that there is a uniform constant $C$, which may be different on different lines, such that $a \leq C b$. We denote by $\int_{\mathbb{R}^{3}} f \mid g d x$ the $L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)$ inner product of $f$ and $g$, and $L^{p}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)$ by $L_{+}^{p}$. Finally we shall always denote $\nabla_{y}$ by $\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}$ and $\mathcal{T} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left(\partial_{t}, \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}\right)$.

## 2. Formal asymptotic analysis

### 2.1. Outer expansion.

Since the boundary layer is concentrated in the $\varepsilon$ - neighborhood of $\{z=0\}$, we call the domain $\mathfrak{O} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left\{x=(y, z): y \in \mathbb{R}^{2}, z>\varepsilon\right\}$ the outer region, and the associated vertical variable $z$ is called outer variable. We also denote the inner region by $\mathfrak{I} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}$ $\left\{x=(y, z): y \in \mathbb{R}^{2}, 0 \leq z<\varepsilon\right\}$, and call $Z=\frac{z}{\varepsilon}$ the inner variable, which makes us to specify the so-called "inner limit process".

In the outer region $\mathfrak{O}$, we formally seek the solution $\left(a^{\varepsilon}, \varphi^{\varepsilon}\right)$ of (1.5) with the form:

$$
\begin{equation*}
a^{\varepsilon}(t, x)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k} a_{k}(t, y, z) \quad \text { and } \quad \varphi^{\varepsilon}(t, x)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k} \varphi_{k}(t, y, z) . \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

By substituting (2.1) into (1.5), we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k} \partial_{t} a_{k}+\sum_{k_{1}, k_{2}=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k_{1}+k_{2}}\left(\nabla \varphi_{k_{1}} \cdot \nabla a_{k_{2}}+\frac{1}{2} a_{k_{1}} \Delta \varphi_{k_{2}}\right)=0 \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
\sum_{k_{1}, k_{2}=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k_{1}+k_{2}} a_{k_{1}} \partial_{t} \varphi_{k_{2}}+\sum_{k_{1}, k_{2}, k_{3}=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k_{1}+k_{2}+k_{3}} \frac{a_{k_{1}}}{2}( & \left.\nabla \varphi_{k_{2}} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{k_{3}}+2 a_{k_{2}} a_{k_{3}}\right)  \tag{2.3}\\
& -\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k} a_{k}=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k+2} \Delta a_{k} .
\end{align*}
$$

Vanishing the coefficients to the zeroth order of $\varepsilon$ in (2.2) and (2.3) gives

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\partial_{t} a_{0}+\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla a_{0}+\frac{1}{2} a_{0} \Delta \varphi_{0}=0, \quad(t, x) \in \mathbb{R}_{+} \times \mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}  \tag{2.4}\\
\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}+\left(a_{0}^{2}-1\right)=0,
\end{array}\right.
$$

where we used the fact that $a_{0}$ has a positive lower bound which will be justified in Section 4.
In view of (1.2) and (1.6), we implement the system (2.4) with the initial and boundary conditions:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.a_{0}\right|_{t=0}=a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}},\left.\quad \varphi_{0}\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}} \quad \text { and }\left.\quad \varphi_{0}\right|_{z=0}=0, \quad a_{0} \rightarrow 1 \quad \text { as } \quad|x| \rightarrow \infty . \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

We shall prove the local well-posedness of the above problem with sufficiently smooth initial data in Section 4.

Vanishing the coefficients of $\varepsilon^{1}$ in (2.2) and (2.3) leads to the coupled system $\left(a_{1}, \varphi_{1}\right)$ :

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\partial_{t} a_{1}+\nabla a_{0} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{1}+\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla a_{1}+\frac{1}{2} a_{1} \Delta \varphi_{0}+\frac{1}{2} a_{0} \Delta \varphi_{1}=0, \quad(t, x) \in \mathbb{R}_{+} \times \mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}  \tag{2.6}\\
\partial_{t} \varphi_{1}+\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{1}+2 a_{0} a_{1}=0 \\
\left.a_{1}\right|_{t=0}=a_{1,0}^{\text {in }},\left.\quad \varphi_{1}\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{1,0}^{\text {in }}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $\left(a_{1,0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \varphi_{1,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)$ is given by (1.2).
In general, by vanishing the coefficients of $\varepsilon^{k+2}$ in (2.2) and (2.3) for $k=0, \cdots, m$, and using (1.2), we find

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\partial_{t} a_{k+2}+\nabla a_{0} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{k+2}+\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla a_{k+2}+\frac{\Delta \varphi_{0}}{2} a_{k+2}+\frac{a_{0}}{2} \Delta \varphi_{k+2}=f_{k+1}^{a}  \tag{2.7}\\
\partial_{t} \varphi_{k+2}+\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{k+2}+2 a_{0} a_{k+2}=\frac{1}{2 a_{0}}\left(\Delta a_{k}+g_{k+1}^{\varphi}\right), \\
\left.a_{k+2}\right|_{t=0}=a_{k+2,0}^{\text {in }},\left.\quad \varphi_{k+2}\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{k+2,0}^{\mathrm{in}},
\end{array}\right.
$$

where the source terms $\left(f_{k+1}^{a}, g_{k+1}^{\varphi}\right)$ are determined by

$$
\begin{align*}
& f_{k+1}^{a} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}-\sum_{k_{1}=1}^{k+1}\left(\nabla \varphi_{k_{1}} \cdot \nabla a_{k+2-k_{1}}+\frac{1}{2} a_{k_{1}} \Delta \varphi_{k+2-k_{1}}\right), \\
& g_{k+1}^{\varphi} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}-\sum_{k_{1}=1}^{k+1} a_{k_{1}} \partial_{t} \varphi_{k+2-k_{1}}-\sum_{\substack{k_{1}+k_{2}+k_{3}=k+2 \\
0 \leq k_{1}, k_{2}, k_{3} \leq k+1}} \frac{a_{k_{1}}}{2}\left(\nabla \varphi_{k_{2}} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{k_{3}}+2 a_{k_{2}} a_{k_{3}}\right) . \tag{2.8}
\end{align*}
$$

We shall implement the above systems with boundary conditions in Subsection 2.2.
2.2. Uniformly valid approximation. In all that follows, we shall always denote

$$
\begin{equation*}
[f]_{\varepsilon}(x) \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} f\left(y, \frac{z}{\varepsilon}\right) \tag{2.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

With the outer solution $\left(a_{j}, \varphi_{j}\right)$ for $j=0,1,2, \ldots$ in hand, we shall use the Successive Complementary Expansion Method (SCEM for short, see [7]) to seek a Uniformly Valid Approximate solutions (UVA for short) to (1.5). In order to do so, we take the following ansatz

$$
\begin{align*}
& a^{\varepsilon}(t, x)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k}\left(a_{k}(t, x)+\left[A_{k}\right]_{\varepsilon}(t, x)\right) \quad \text { and } \\
& \varphi^{\varepsilon}(t, x)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k}\left(\varphi_{k}(t, x)+\left[\Phi_{k}\right]_{\varepsilon}(t, x)\right) \tag{2.10}
\end{align*}
$$

We require that both $A_{k}(t, y, Z)$ and $\Phi_{k}(t, y, Z)$ together with all of their derivatives are rapidly vanishing as $Z \rightarrow+\infty$.

We denote $\bar{g}(t, y)$ the trace of $g(t, y, z)$ on the boundary $\{z=0\}$, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{g}(t, y) \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} g(t, y, z=0) \tag{2.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Formally let us write that

$$
\begin{equation*}
g(t, y, z)=\sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{z^{j}}{j!} \overline{\partial_{z}^{j} g}(t, y) \tag{2.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

By plugging the ansatz (2.10) into (1.5) and using (2.2), (2.3) and (2.12), we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
& \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k} \partial_{t} A_{k}+\sum_{k_{1}, k_{2}=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k_{1}+k_{2}}\left(\left(\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{k_{1}} \cdot \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} A_{k_{2}}+\frac{1}{2} A_{k_{1}} \Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{k_{2}}\right)\right. \\
& \left.\quad+\varepsilon^{-2}\left(\partial_{Z} \Phi_{k_{1}} \partial_{Z} A_{k_{2}}+\frac{1}{2} A_{k_{1}} \partial_{Z}^{2} \Phi_{k_{2}}\right)\right) \\
& +\sum_{k_{1}, k_{2}, j=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k_{1}+k_{2}+j} \frac{Z^{j}}{j!}\left(\overline{\nabla_{y} \partial_{z}^{j} \varphi_{k_{1}}} \cdot \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} A_{k_{2}}+\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{k_{1}} \cdot \overline{\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{z}^{j} a_{k_{2}}}+\frac{\overline{\partial_{z}^{j} a_{k_{1}}}}{2} \Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{k_{2}}\right.  \tag{2.13}\\
& \quad+\frac{\left.\left.A_{k_{1}} \overline{2} \overline{\Delta \partial_{z}^{j} \varphi_{k_{2}}}+\varepsilon^{-1} \overline{\partial_{z}^{j+1} \varphi_{k_{1}}} \partial_{Z} A_{k_{2}}+\partial_{Z} \Phi_{k_{1}} \overline{\partial_{z}^{j+1} a_{k_{2}}}\right)+\varepsilon^{-2} \frac{\overline{\partial_{z}^{j} a_{k_{1}}}}{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} \Phi_{k_{2}}\right)=0}{}
\end{align*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left.\sum_{k_{1}, k_{2}, j=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k_{1}+k_{2}+j} \frac{Z^{j}}{j!} \overline{\left(\overline{\partial_{z}^{j}} a_{k_{1}}\right.} \partial_{t} \Phi_{k_{2}}+A_{k_{1}} \overline{\partial_{t} \partial_{z}^{j} \varphi_{k_{2}}}\right)+\sum_{k_{1}, k_{2}=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k_{1}+k_{2}}\left(A_{k_{1}} \partial_{t} \Phi_{k_{2}}\right) \\
& -\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k} A_{k}+\sum_{k_{1}, k_{2}, k_{3}, j_{1}, j_{2}=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k_{1}+k_{2}+k_{3}+j_{1}+j_{2}} \frac{Z^{j_{1}+j_{2}}}{j_{1}!j_{2}!} \overline{\partial_{z}^{j_{1}} a_{k_{1}} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{z}^{j_{2}} \varphi_{k_{2}}} \cdot \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{k_{3}}+ \\
& \left.+\frac{A_{k_{1}}}{2} \overline{\nabla \partial_{z}^{j_{1}} \varphi_{k_{2}}} \cdot \overline{\nabla \partial_{z}^{j_{2}} \varphi_{k_{3}}}+3 \overline{\partial_{z}^{j_{1}} a_{k_{1}} \partial_{z}^{j_{2}} a_{k_{2}}} A_{k_{3}}+\varepsilon^{-1} \overline{\partial_{z}^{j_{1}} a_{k_{1}} \partial_{z}^{j_{2}+1} \varphi_{k_{2}}} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{k_{3}}\right) \\
& +\sum_{k_{1}, k_{2}, k_{3}, j_{1}=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k_{1}+k_{2}+k_{3}+j_{1}} \frac{Z^{j_{1}}}{j_{1}!}\left(A_{k_{1}} \overline{\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{z}^{j_{1}} \varphi_{k_{2}}} \cdot \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{k_{3}}+\frac{\overline{\partial_{z}^{j_{1}} a_{k_{1}}}}{2} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{k_{2}} \cdot \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{k_{3}}+\right.  \tag{2.14}\\
& \left.+3 \overline{\partial_{z}^{j_{1}} a_{k_{1}}} A_{k_{2}} A_{k_{3}}+\varepsilon^{-1} A_{k_{1}} \overline{\partial_{z}^{j_{1}+1} \varphi_{k_{2}}} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{k_{3}}+\varepsilon^{-2} \overline{\frac{\partial_{z}^{j_{1}} a_{k_{1}}}{2}} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{k_{2}} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{k_{3}}\right) \\
& +\sum_{k_{1}, k_{2}, k_{3}=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k_{1}+k_{2}+k_{3}} \frac{A_{k_{1}}}{2}\left(\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{k_{2}} \cdot \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{k_{3}}+2 A_{k_{2}} A_{k_{3}}+\varepsilon^{-2} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{k_{2}} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{k_{3}}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k} \partial_{Z}^{2} A_{k}+\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \varepsilon^{k+2} \Delta_{\mathrm{h}} A_{k} \quad \text { with } \quad \Delta_{\mathrm{h}}=\partial_{y_{1}}^{2}+\partial_{y_{2}}^{2} .
\end{align*}
$$

The coefficients of $\varepsilon^{-2}$ in (2.13) and (2.14) yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{2}\left(A_{0}+\overline{a_{0}}\right) \partial_{Z}^{2} \Phi_{0}+\partial_{Z} \Phi_{0} \partial_{Z} A_{0}=0 \tag{2.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{2}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)\left|\partial_{Z} \Phi_{0}\right|^{2}=0 \tag{2.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

respectively.
We first assume that $A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}$ has a positive lower bound, which we shall justify in Section 5. Then due to $\left.\Phi_{0}\right|_{Z=\infty}=0$, we deduce from (2.16) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi_{0}(t, y, Z) \equiv 0 \tag{2.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly by virtue of (2.4) and (2.17), we find that the coefficients of $\varepsilon^{-1}$ in (2.13) and of $\varepsilon^{0}$ in (2.14) give respectively

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{2}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right) \partial_{Z}^{2} \Phi_{1}+\left(\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}+{\left.\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right) \partial_{Z} A_{0}=0, \text {, }, \text {. }}\right. \tag{2.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} A_{0}=\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right) \partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}{\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}+\frac{\bar{a}_{0}+A_{0}}{2}\left(\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}\right)^{2}+A_{0}^{3}+3 \bar{a}_{0} A_{0}^{2}+2 \bar{a}_{0}^{2} A_{0} . . . . ~ . ~}_{\text {. }} \tag{2.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

According to the boundary condition $\left.a^{\varepsilon}\right|_{z=0}=1$ in (1.6), we have the matched condition on the boundary $\{z=0\}$ that $A_{0}(Z=0)+a_{0}(z=0)=1$. So that we impose the following boundary condition for $A_{0}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.A_{0}\right|_{Z=0}=1-a_{0}(t, y, 0) . \tag{2.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Furthermore, we require that both $A_{0}(t, y, Z)$ and $\Phi_{1}(t, y, Z)$ along with all of their derivatives are rapidly vanishing as $Z \rightarrow+\infty$. We shall present the unique solvability of the required solution to the system (2.18-2.19) in Section 5.

Notice the boundary condition $\left.\varphi^{\varepsilon}\right|_{z=0}=0$ in (1.6) and $\left.\varphi_{0}\right|_{z=0}=0$ in (2.5), we have the following matched condition of $\varphi_{1}$ on the boundary $\{z=0\}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\varphi_{1}\right|_{z=0}=-\Phi_{1}(t, y, 0) \tag{2.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

We implement the system (2.6) with the Dirichlet boundary condition (2.21), and we shall prove its unique solvability in Section 7.

Inductively, assuming that we already obtain $\left(a_{0}, \varphi_{0}\right),\left(a_{j+1}, \varphi_{j+1}\right)$ and $\left(A_{j}, \Phi_{j+1}\right)$ with $0 \leq j \leq k \leq m-1$, we get, by vanishing of the coefficients of $\varepsilon^{k}$ in (2.13) and of $\varepsilon^{k+1}$ in (2.14), that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\bar{a}_{0}+A_{0}}{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} \Phi_{k+2}+\partial_{Z} A_{0} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{k+2}+\left(\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}+\bar{\partial}_{z} \varphi_{0}\right) \partial_{Z} A_{k+1}+\frac{A_{k+1}}{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} \Phi_{1}=F_{k} \tag{2.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{1}{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} A_{k+1}= & \left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)\left(\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}+\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right) \partial_{Z} \Phi_{k+2} \\
& +\left(3 A_{0}^{2}+6 \bar{a}_{0} A_{0}+2 \bar{a}_{0}^{2}+\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}{\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}\right|^{2}\right) A_{k+1}+G_{k} \tag{2.23}
\end{align*}
$$

where the source terms $\left(F_{k}, G_{k}\right)$ depend only on $\left(\overline{\partial_{z}^{\ell} a_{0}}, \overline{\partial_{z}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}}\right)$ for $\ell \leq k+2$, and $\left(\overline{\partial_{z}^{\ell} a_{j+1}}, \overline{\partial_{z}^{k} \varphi_{\ell+1}}\right)$ and $\left(A_{j}, \nabla \Phi_{j+1}\right)$ for $0 \leq j \leq k$ and $0 \leq \ell+j \leq k+1$, the explicit form of which will be presented in the Appendix A.

Thanks to the matched boundary condition on $\{z=0\}$ for the outer and inner solutions, we impose the following condition for $A_{k+1}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.A_{k+1}\right|_{Z=0}=-a_{k+1}(t, y, 0) \tag{2.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

We also require that both $A_{k+1}(t, y, Z)$ and $\Phi_{k+2}(t, y, Z)$ together with all of their derivatives are rapidly vanishing as $Z \rightarrow+\infty$.

Finally, with thus obtained $\Phi_{k+2}$, according to the matched boundary condition on $\{z=0\}$ for the outer and inner solutions, we implement the system (2.7) with the Dirichlet boundary condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\varphi_{k+2}\right|_{z=0}=-\Phi_{k+2}(t, y, 0) . \tag{2.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

The unique solvability of the systems (2.22-2.23) and (2.7) with the boundary condition (2.25) will be outlined in Section 7.

## 3. The main Result and its sketch of the proof

We first observe from (2.4) that

$$
\begin{align*}
\left.\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right|_{t=0} & =-\left.\left(\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}+\left(\rho_{0}-1\right)\right)\right|_{t=0}  \tag{3.1}\\
& =1-\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)^{2}-\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right|^{2} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \varphi_{0,1}^{\mathrm{in}}
\end{align*}
$$

To guarantee the local existence of smooth solutions to (2.4-2.5), we need the following compatibility conditions for the initial data:
$\left(\mathcal{A}_{0}\right)$ : Let $\left(\varphi_{0,0}^{\text {in }}, \varphi_{0,1}^{\text {in }}\right) \in H^{s_{0}} \times H^{s_{0}-1}$ for $4 \leq s_{0} \in \mathbb{N}$. We assume that the data satisfies $\partial_{t}^{j} \varphi_{0}(0, y, 0)=0$ for $y \in \mathbb{R}^{2}$ and $j=0, \cdots, s_{0}-1$.

Definition 3.1. Let $s, T>0$, we define the functional space $W_{T}^{s} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \bigcap_{j=0}^{[s]} C^{j}\left([0, T] ; H^{s-j}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)\right)$, where $[s]$ denotes the integer part of $s$ and its norm is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|\varphi(t)\|_{W^{s}}^{2} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \sum_{j=0}^{[s]}\left\|\partial_{t}^{j} \varphi(t)\right\|_{H^{s-j}}^{2} \quad \text { and } \quad\|\varphi\|_{W_{T}^{s}} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \sup _{t \in[0, T]}\|\varphi(t)\|_{W^{s}} \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

We shall prove in Section 4 that
Proposition 3.1. Let $4 \leq s_{0} \in \mathbb{N}$ and $a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1 \in H^{s_{0}-1}, \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}} \in H^{s_{0}}$ which satisfies the compatibility condition $\left(\mathcal{A}_{0}\right)$. We assume that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}} \leq c \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

for some sufficiently small positive constant $c$, then there exists a positive constant $\mathcal{C}$ so that for $T_{0} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \mathcal{C} c^{-1}$, the system (2.4-2.5) has a unique solution $\left(a_{0}, \varphi_{0}\right)$ on $\left[0, T_{0}\right]$, which satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\left(a_{0}-1, \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}, \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-1}} \leq C\left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}} \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

We remark that the main difficulty in the proof of Proposition 3.1 lies in the boundary condition $\left.\varphi_{0}\right|_{z=0}=0$ in (2.5) so that one can not apply the standard theory on symmetric hyperbolic system to prove its local well-posedness. The new idea here is to reformulate (2.42.5 ) to be an initial and boundary value problem of a nonlinear wave equation (4.4-4.6) (see Section 4) under the smallness initial condition (3.3).

In order to solve the boundary layer equation, we recall the boundary layer profile space from [6]:

Definition 3.2. Let $s \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$and $\gamma_{0}>0$ be a positive constant, we define $W_{\gamma_{0}}^{s}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)$ as the completion of $\left\{F(y, Z) \in H^{s}\left(\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{h}}^{2} ; H^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}_{Z}^{+}\right)\right)\right\}$with $\|F\|_{W_{\gamma_{0}}^{s}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)}$ being finite, and

$$
\mathcal{W}_{\gamma_{0}, T}^{s}=\mathcal{W}_{\gamma_{0}}^{s}\left([0, T] \times \mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right) \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \bigcap_{j=0}^{[s]} C^{j}\left([0, T] ; W_{\gamma_{0}}^{s-j}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)\right)
$$

where the norms are given by

$$
\begin{align*}
& \|F\|_{W_{\gamma_{0}}^{s}} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \max _{0 \leq \ell \leq[s]} \sup _{Z \in \mathbb{R}^{+}}\left(e^{\gamma_{0} Z}\left\|\partial_{Z}^{\ell} F(\cdot, Z)\right\|_{H^{s}\left(\mathbb{R}_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right)}\right) \quad \text { and } \\
& \|G\|_{\mathcal{W}_{\gamma_{0}, T}^{s}} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \max _{0 \leq j \leq[s]} \sup _{t \in[0, T]}\left\|\partial_{t}^{j} G(t)\right\|_{W_{\gamma_{0}}^{s-j}} \tag{3.5}
\end{align*}
$$

We shall prove in Section 5 that

Proposition 3.2. Under the assumptions of Proposition 3.1, the coupled equations (2.182.19) with the boundary condition $(2.20)$ has a unique solution $\left(A_{0}, \Phi_{1}\right)$ in $\mathcal{W}_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}-\frac{3}{2}}$, where $T_{0}$ is determined by Proposition 3.1. Furthermore, there holds

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\left(A_{0}, \Phi_{1}\right)\right\|_{\mathcal{W}_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}-\frac{3}{2}}} \leq C\left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}} \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

To solve the systems (2.6) and (2.7) for the inner expansions, we are going to solve first a linear wave equation in Section 6. More precisely, let $\varphi_{0}$ be determined by Proposition 3.1 and $f \in W_{T}^{s-1}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)$ for $s \leq s_{0}-1$ and $T \leq T_{0}$, we are going to solve the following linear wave equation

$$
\begin{align*}
P\left(\varphi_{0}, D\right) \varphi \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} & \partial_{t}^{2} \varphi-\operatorname{div}\left(a_{0}^{2} \nabla \varphi\right)+2 \nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi  \tag{3.7}\\
& +\operatorname{div}\left(\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \varphi\right) \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)+\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \varphi+\Delta \varphi_{0} \partial_{t} \varphi=f
\end{align*}
$$

together with the following initial and boundary conditions:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi(t, y, 0)=g(t, y) \in W_{T}^{s+\frac{1}{2}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{2}\right) \quad \text { and }\left.\quad \varphi\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{, 0}^{\mathrm{in}},\left.\quad \partial_{t} \varphi\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{, 1}^{\mathrm{in}} \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

The result about the unique solvability of the system (3.7-3.8) states as follows:
Theorem 3.1. Let $\left(\varphi_{, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \varphi_{, 1}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)$ satisfy $\nabla \varphi_{, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \varphi_{, 1}^{\mathrm{in}} \in H^{s-1}$ and the compatibility condition: $\partial_{t}^{\ell}(\varphi-g)(0, y, 0)=0$ for $y \in \mathbb{R}^{2}$ and $\ell=0, \cdots, s-1$. Let $f \in W_{T}^{s-1}$ for some integer $s \in\left[4, s_{0}\right]$. Then under the assumptions of Proposition 3.1, the system (3.7-3.8) has a unique solution $\varphi$ on $[0, T]$, which satisfies

$$
\left\|\left(\partial_{t} \varphi, \nabla \varphi\right)\right\|_{W_{T}^{s-1}} \leq C\left(\|g\|_{W_{T}^{s+\frac{1}{2}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{2}\right)}+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right\|_{H^{s-1}}+\left\|\varphi_{, 1}^{\mathrm{in}}\right\|_{H^{s-1}}+\|f\|_{W_{T}^{s-1}}\right)
$$

With $\left(a_{0}, \varphi_{0}\right)$ being determined by Proposition 3.1 and ( $A_{0}, \Phi_{1}$ ) being determined by Proposition 3.2, we are going to solve the system (2.6) with the boundary condition (2.21).

We first observe from (2.4) and (2.6) that

$$
\partial_{t}\left(a_{1} a_{0}\right)+\operatorname{div}\left(a_{0} a_{1} \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)+\frac{1}{2} \operatorname{div}\left(a_{0}^{2} \nabla \varphi_{1}\right)=0 .
$$

Then we get, by taking $\partial_{t}$ to the $\varphi_{1}$ equation of (2.6) and inserting the above equation to the resulting one, that

$$
\begin{align*}
\partial_{t}^{2} \varphi_{1}-\Delta \varphi_{1}+\operatorname{div} & \left(\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) \nabla \varphi_{1}\right)+\partial_{t}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{1}\right)  \tag{3.9}\\
& +\operatorname{div}\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{1} \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)+\operatorname{div}\left(\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{1}\right) \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)=0 .
\end{align*}
$$

Noticing from (2.6) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\partial_{t} \varphi_{1}\right|_{t=0}=-\left.\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{1}\right|_{t=0}-\left.2 a_{0} a_{1}\right|_{t=0}=\nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{1,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-2 a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}} a_{1,0}^{\mathrm{in}} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \varphi_{1,1}^{\mathrm{in}}, \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

we complement the equation (3.9) with the boundary condition (2.21) and the initial data

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\varphi_{1}\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{1,0}^{\mathrm{in}},\left.\quad \partial_{t} \varphi_{1}\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{1,1}^{\mathrm{in}} . \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

By applying Theorem 3.1, we shall prove in Section 7 that
Proposition 3.3. Let $s_{0} \geq 6$ be an integer. Let $a_{1,0}^{\text {in }}, \nabla \varphi_{1,0}^{\text {in }} \in H^{s_{0}-3}$ which satisfy the compatibility condition: $\partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\varphi_{1}+\Phi_{1}\right)(0, y, 0)=0$ for $y \in \mathbb{R}^{2}$ and $\ell=0, \cdots, s_{0}-3$. Then under the assumptions of Proposition 3.1, the system (2.6) with boundary condition (2.21) has a unique solution $\left(a_{1}, \varphi_{1}\right)$ on $\left[0, T_{0}\right]$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\left(a_{1}, \partial_{t} \varphi_{1}, \nabla \varphi_{1}\right)\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-3}} \leq C\left(\left\|\left(a_{1,0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \nabla \varphi_{1,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-3}}+\left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}}\right) \tag{3.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $T_{0}$ being determined by Proposition 3.1.

Let us turn to the solvability of the boundary layer problem (2.22-2.23) with the boundary condition (2.24) for $0 \leq k \leq m$. In fact, we shall prove in Section 7 that

Proposition 3.4. Let $s_{0} \geq 2 k+5$ be an integer. Let $a_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \nabla \varphi_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}} \in H^{s_{0}-2 j-1}$ with $j=$ $1, \ldots, k+1$, which satisfy the compatibility conditions:
$\left(\mathcal{A}_{k+1}\right): \partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\varphi_{j}+\Phi_{j}\right)(0, y, 0)=0$ for $y \in \mathbb{R}^{2}, \ell=0, \cdots, s_{0}-2 j-1$ and $j=1, \cdots, k+1$.
Then under the assumptions of Proposition 3.1, the system (2.22-2.23) with the boundary condition (2.24) has a unique solution $\left(A_{k+1}, \Phi_{k+2}\right)$ in $\mathcal{W}_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}-2(k+2)+\frac{1}{2}}$. Moreover, there holds

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\left(A_{k+1}, \Phi_{k+2}\right)\right\|_{\mathcal{W}_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}-2(k+2)+\frac{1}{2}}} \leq C\left(\left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}}+\sum_{j=1}^{k+1}\left\|\left(a_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \nabla \varphi_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-2 j-1}}\right) . \tag{3.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then along the same line to the proof of Proposition 3.3, we have
Proposition 3.5. Let $s_{0} \geq 2 k+7$ be an integer. Let $a_{k+2,0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \nabla \varphi_{k+2,0}^{\mathrm{in}} \in H^{s_{0}-2 k-5}$ which satisfy the compatibility condition $\left(\mathcal{A}_{k+2}\right)$. Then under the assumptions of Propositions 3.1 and 3.4, the system (2.7) with boundary condition (2.25) has a unique solution $\left(a_{k+2}, \varphi_{k+2}\right)$ on $\left[0, T_{0}\right]$ such that

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\|\left(a_{k+2}, \partial_{t} \varphi_{k+2}, \nabla \varphi_{k+2}\right)\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-1-2(k+2)}} \leq C( & \left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}} \\
& \left.\quad+\sum_{j=1}^{k+2}\left\|\left(a_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \nabla \varphi_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-2 j-1}}\right) \tag{3.14}
\end{align*}
$$

for $T_{0}$ being determined by Proposition 3.1.
Let $\left(a_{j}, \varphi_{j}\right)$ for $j=0, \cdots, m+2$, and $\left(A_{j}, \Phi_{j+1}\right)$ for $j=0, \cdots, m+1$, be constructed in the previous propositions. We denote

$$
\begin{align*}
& \Psi^{a, m} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} a^{\varepsilon, m} e^{\frac{i}{\varepsilon} \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}} \quad \text { with } \quad a^{\varepsilon, m}=a^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}+\left[a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}, \quad \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}=\varphi^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}+\left[\varphi^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}, \\
& a^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}=\sum_{j=0}^{m+1} \varepsilon^{j} a_{j}, \quad a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}=\sum_{j=0}^{m+1} \varepsilon^{j} A_{j}, \quad \varphi^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}=\sum_{j=0}^{m+2} \varepsilon^{j} \varphi_{j}, \quad \varphi^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}=\sum_{j=1}^{m+2} \varepsilon^{j} \Phi_{j}, \tag{3.15}
\end{align*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{E}_{0} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}}^{2}+\sum_{j=1}^{m+2}\left\|\left(a_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \nabla \varphi_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-2 j-1}}^{2} . \tag{3.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next let $w$ and $\phi$ be real-valued functions, we are going to seek the true solution of (1.1) with the form:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi^{\varepsilon}=\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}+w\right) e^{i\left(\frac{\varphi^{\varepsilon, m}}{\varepsilon}+\phi\right)}, \tag{3.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $(w, \phi)$ satisfy the boundary conditions:

$$
\left.w\right|_{z=0}=0,\left.\quad \phi\right|_{z=0}=0 .
$$

In view of (3.17), we write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi^{\varepsilon}=\Psi^{a, m}+\mathfrak{w} e^{\frac{i}{\varepsilon} \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}} \quad \text { with } \quad \mathfrak{w}=w+\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}+w\right)\left(e^{i \phi}-1\right) \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} w_{\mathrm{R}}+i w_{\mathrm{I}} . \tag{3.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

It turns out that it is more convenient to handle the estimate of $\mathfrak{w}$ than that of $(w, \phi)$. As a matter of fact, we shall derive in Section 9 that ( $w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}$ ) verifies

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\varepsilon\left(\partial_{t} w_{\mathrm{R}}+\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)\right)+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \Delta w_{\mathrm{I}}  \tag{3.19}\\
\quad=\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right) w_{\mathrm{I}}-\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}+\operatorname{Im}\left(Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right) \quad \text { in } \quad \mathbb{R}_{+} \times \mathbb{R}_{+}^{3} \\
\varepsilon\left(\partial_{t} w_{\mathrm{I}}+\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right)-\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \Delta w_{\mathrm{R}}+\left(2\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right) w_{\mathrm{R}} \\
\quad=\varepsilon^{m+1} a^{\varepsilon, m} r_{a}^{m}-\operatorname{Re}\left(Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right) \\
\left.w_{\mathrm{R}}\right|_{z=0}=0,\left.\quad w_{\mathrm{I}}\right|_{z=0}=0,
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $u^{\varepsilon, m} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \nabla \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}, \mathcal{S}_{f}(g) \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} f \cdot \nabla g+\frac{1}{2} g \nabla \cdot f$, and $Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w}), r_{a}^{m}$ and $r_{\varphi}^{m}$ are given respectively by (9.9) and (9.11).

By crucially using the symmetric property of the operator $\mathcal{S}_{f}(g)$ (see Lemma 8.2) and the special structure of the system (3.19) (especially that we can have the estimate of $\left\|w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}$ ), we shall prove in Section 9 the following proposition:

Proposition 3.6. Let $m, N$ and $s_{0}$ be integers so that $m, N \geq 4$ and $s_{0} \geq 2 m+9+N$. Let $\Psi^{a, m}=a^{\varepsilon, m} e^{\frac{i}{\varepsilon} \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}}$ be the approximate solutions of (1.1) constructed in (3.15). Then under the assumptions of Proposition 3.5, there exists a small enough positive constant $\varepsilon_{0}>0$ such that for any $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right)$, the system (1.1) has a unique solution $\Psi^{\varepsilon}=\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}+\mathfrak{w}\right) e^{i \frac{i^{\varepsilon, m}}{\varepsilon}}$ on $\left[0, T_{0}\right]$. Moreover, for all $t \in\left[0, T_{0}\right]$ and $\mathcal{T} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left(\partial_{t}, \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}\right)$, there holds

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{j=0}^{N-1}\left(\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} \mathfrak{w}\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2}\right) \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0} \varepsilon^{2 m+2} \tag{3.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

The main result of this paper states as follows, the proof of which will be presented in Section 9.

Theorem 3.2. Let $m \geq 4$ and $s_{0} \geq 2 m+13$ be integers. Let $a^{\varepsilon, m}, \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}$ and $\Psi^{a, m}$ be constructed in (3.15). Let $a_{j, 0}^{\text {in }}, \nabla \varphi_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}} \in H^{s_{0}-2 j-1}$ with $j=1, \ldots, m+2$, which satisfy the compatibility conditions, $\mathcal{A}_{m+2}$. Then there exist sufficiently small positive constants $c$ and $\varepsilon_{0}$ such that under the condition (3.3), for any $\varepsilon \in\left(0, \varepsilon_{0}\right)$, (1.1) has a unique solution $\Psi^{\varepsilon}$, which satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|e^{-i \frac{\varphi^{\varepsilon, m}}{\varepsilon}}\left(\Psi^{\varepsilon}-\Psi^{a, m}\right)\right\|_{L_{T_{0}}^{\infty}\left(W^{1, \infty}\right)} \leq C \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}} \varepsilon^{m-1} \tag{3.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

for the positive time $T_{0}$ being determined by Proposition 3.1.

## 4. The local well-posedness of the limit system (2.4-2.5)

In this section, we shall prove the local existence of smooth solutions to the initial-boundary value problem of the limit system (2.4-2.5). Let us denote $\rho_{0} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} a_{0}^{2}$. We rewrite (2.4-2.5) as

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\partial_{t} \rho_{0}+\nabla \cdot\left(\rho_{0} \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)=0, \quad(t, x) \in \mathbb{R}_{+} \times \mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}  \tag{4.1}\\
\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}+\left(\rho_{0}-1\right)=0, \\
\left.\varphi_{0}\right|_{z=0}=0 \text { and } \quad \rho_{0} \rightarrow 1 \quad \text { as } \quad|x| \rightarrow \infty \\
\left.\rho_{0}\right|_{t=0}=\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)^{2},\left.\quad \varphi\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}
\end{array}\right.
$$

By substituting the equivalent form of the second equation in (4.1)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho_{0}=-\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}-1\right) \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

into the first equation of (4.1), we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial_{t}^{2} \varphi_{0}+\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}-\nabla \cdot\left(\rho_{0} \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)=0 \tag{4.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

which can also be equivalently written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial_{t}^{2} \varphi_{0}-\Delta \varphi_{0}+\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\operatorname{div}\left(\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)=0 \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

or

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial_{t}^{2} \varphi_{0}+\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\partial_{t} \rho_{0}=0 \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $\varphi_{0,1}^{\mathrm{in}}$ be given by (3.1). We implement the wave equation (4.4) with the initial-boundary conditions:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\varphi_{0}\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}},\left.\quad \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{0,1}^{\mathrm{in}} \quad \text { and }\left.\quad \varphi_{0}\right|_{z=0}=0 . \tag{4.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Before proceeding, let us first present the following product law in the space $W_{T}^{s}$, the proof of which will be postponed in the Appendix B.

Lemma 4.1. Let $2 \leq s$ and $W_{T}^{s}$ be given by Definition 3.1. Then for any $f, g \in W_{T}^{s}$, one has

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|f g\|_{W_{T}^{s}} \leq C_{s}\|f\|_{W_{T}^{s}}\|g\|_{W_{T}^{s}} . \tag{4.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

The main result of this section states as follows:
Theorem 4.1. Let $4 \leq s_{0} \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\left(\varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \varphi_{0,1}^{\mathrm{in}}\right) \in H^{s_{0}}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right) \times H^{s_{0}-1}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)$ which satisfies the compatibility condition $\left(\mathcal{A}_{0}\right)$. We assume that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}}+\left\|\varphi_{0,1}^{\mathrm{in}}\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}} \leq c_{0}, \tag{4.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

for some $c_{0}$ sufficiently small, then there exists a positive constant $\mathcal{C}$ so that for $T=\mathcal{C} c_{0}^{-1}$, (4.4-4.6) has a unique solution $\varphi_{0}$ on $[0, T]$, which satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}, \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{W_{T}^{s_{0}-1}} \leq C\left(\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}}+\left\|\varphi_{0,1}^{\mathrm{in}}\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}}\right) \tag{4.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. It is well-known that the existence of solutions to a nonlinear partial differential equation can be obtained by first constructing the appropriate approximate solutions, and then performing uniform estimates for such approximate solutions, and finally applying a compactness argument. For simplicity, here we just present the a priori estimates for sufficiently smooth solutions of (4.4-4.6) on $\left[0, T^{*}\left[\right.\right.$ with $T^{*}$ being the maximal time of existence.

In what follows, we shall separate the proof into the following steps:
Step 1. $H_{\mathrm{tan}}^{1}$ estimate
Due to $\left.\partial_{t} \varphi\right|_{z=0}=0$, by taking the $L^{2}$ inner product of (4.3) with $\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}$ and using integration by parts, we get

$$
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}+\rho_{0}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) d x=\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\partial_{t} \rho_{0}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}-2\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right) \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right) d x
$$

from which and (4.2), we infer

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}+\rho_{0}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) d x \lesssim & \left(\left\|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right)  \tag{4.10}\\
& \times\left(\left\|\partial_{t}^{2} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}+\left(1+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right)\left\|\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right) .
\end{align*}
$$

Step 2. $H_{\text {tan }}^{2}$ estimate
Recall that $\mathcal{T} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left(\partial_{t}, \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}\right)$. Applying $\mathcal{T}$ to (4.3) gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial_{t}^{2} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}-\nabla \cdot\left(\rho_{0} \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right)+\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}+\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}-\nabla \cdot\left(\mathcal{T} \rho_{0} \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)=0 \tag{4.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Due to $\left.\partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi\right|_{z=0}=0$, by taking the $L^{2}$ inner product of (4.11) with $\partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}$ and using integration by parts, one has

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}+\rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) d x-\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \partial_{t} \rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2} d x \\
& \quad+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right) \partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0} d x+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right) \partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0} d x  \tag{4.12}\\
& \quad+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{T} \rho_{0} \nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0} d x=0 .
\end{align*}
$$

According to (4.2), it is easy to observe that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right) \partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0} d x+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{T} \rho_{0} \nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0} d x \\
& =-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right)\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right) d x \\
& =-\frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right)^{2} d x+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right)\left(\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right) d x .
\end{aligned}
$$

Plugging the above estimate into (4.12) and using the equation (4.5) yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}+\rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}-\left|\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) d x \\
& =\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\partial_{t} \rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}-2\left(\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right)\left(\partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}+\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right)\right) d x
\end{aligned}
$$

which together with (4.2) ensures that

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}+\rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}-\left|\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) d x  \tag{4.13}\\
& \quad \lesssim\left(\left\|\partial_{t}^{2} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}+\left(1+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right)\left\|\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{\infty}\right)\left(\left\|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

Step 3. High-order tangential derivatives estimate
Let $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$, by applying the operator $\mathcal{T}^{\ell}$ (with $\mathcal{T}=\left(\partial_{t}, \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}\right)$ and $\mathcal{T}^{\ell}=\partial_{t}^{\alpha_{1}} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{\alpha_{2}}$ for $\alpha_{1}+\left|\alpha_{2}\right|=$ $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$ ) to (4.11), we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial_{t}^{2} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}-\nabla \cdot\left(\rho_{0} \nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right)+\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}-\nabla \cdot\left(\mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \rho_{0} \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)=g_{\ell} \tag{4.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{aligned}
g_{\ell} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \nabla \cdot\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \rho_{0}\right] \nabla\right. & \left.\nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right)-\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0} \\
& -\mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(\nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right)+\nabla \cdot\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \mathcal{T} \rho_{0}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Noticing that $\left.\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right|_{z=0}=0$, by taking the $L^{2}$ inner product of (4.14) with $\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}$ and using integration by parts, one has

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}+\rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) d x-\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \partial_{t} \rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2} d x \\
& \quad-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \Delta \varphi_{0}\left|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2} d x-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right) \mid\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right) d x  \tag{4.15}\\
& =\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} g_{\ell} \mid \partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0} d x .
\end{align*}
$$

By using integration by parts, one has

$$
\begin{aligned}
- & \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right) \mid\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right) d x \\
= & -\frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2} d x+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right)\left(\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right)\right. \\
& \left.+\left(\nabla\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right) \cdot \nabla \varphi_{0}+\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0} \Delta \varphi_{0}\right) \partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right) d x
\end{aligned}
$$

Plugging the above equality into (4.15) yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}+\rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}-\left|\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) d x=\mathfrak{R}_{\ell} \tag{4.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathfrak{R}_{\ell} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} & \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \partial_{t} \rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2} d x+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \Delta \varphi_{0}\left|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2} d x \\
& -\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right)\left(\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right)\right. \\
& \left.+\left(g_{\ell}-\nabla\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right) \cdot \nabla \varphi_{0}-\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0} \Delta \varphi_{0}\right) \partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right) d x
\end{aligned}
$$

from which, we infer

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\mathfrak{R}_{\ell}\right| \lesssim & \left(\left\|\partial_{t} \rho_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\left\|\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right)\left\|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\Delta \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\left\|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \\
& +\left\|\left(g_{\ell}-\nabla\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right) \cdot \nabla \varphi_{0}-\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0} \Delta \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Recall that for $s \in \mathbb{N},\left\|\varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{W^{s}}^{2}=\sum_{j=0}^{s}\left\|\partial_{t}^{j} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{H^{s-j}}$. Then by virtue of (4.2), and the Sobolev embedding theorem: $H^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right) \hookrightarrow L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)$, we deduce that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\partial_{t} \rho_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\left\|\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}} \lesssim\left(1+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right)\left\|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{3}} . \tag{4.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next for $4 \leq s \in \mathbb{N}$, we claim that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|f g\|_{H^{1}} \lesssim\|f\|_{H^{1}}\|g\|_{H^{2}} \tag{4.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{\ell=1}^{s-2}\left\|\nabla\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; f\right] g\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim\|f\|_{W^{s-1}}\|g\|_{W^{s-2}} \tag{4.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

Indeed, it follows from Sobolev embedding theorem that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|f g\|_{H^{1}} & =\|f g\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\|g \nabla f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\|f \nabla g\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \\
& \leq\left(\|f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\|\nabla f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right)\|g\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}+\|f\|_{L_{+}^{6}}\|\nabla g\|_{L_{+}^{3}} \lesssim\|f(t)\|_{H^{1}}\|g(t)\|_{H^{2}},
\end{aligned}
$$

which yields (4.18).
By applying (4.18), we find

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\nabla \cdot\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; f\right] g\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} & \lesssim \sum_{i=0}^{\ell-1}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell-i} f \mathcal{T}^{i} g\right\|_{H^{1}} \\
& \lesssim \sum_{i=1}^{\ell-1}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell-i} f\right\|_{H^{2}}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{i} g\right\|_{H^{1}}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell} f\right\|_{H^{1}}\|g\|_{H^{2}} \\
& \lesssim \sum_{i=1}^{\ell-1}\|f\|_{W^{\ell-i+2}}\|g\|_{W^{i+1}}+\|f\|_{W^{\ell+1}}\|g\|_{H^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

which leads to (4.19).
Notice that

$$
\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}=\nabla \cdot\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right)-\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \Delta \varphi_{0}\right] \partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}
$$

we get, by applying (4.19) and Lemma 4.1, that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{\ell=1}^{s_{0}-2}\left\|g_{\ell}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim\left(\left\|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-1}}+\right. & \left.\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-1}}+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-1}}^{2}\right) \\
& \times\left(\left\|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-2}}+\left\|\nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-2}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Along the same line, one has

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \sum_{\ell=1}^{s_{0}-2}\left\|\left(\nabla\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right) \cdot \nabla \varphi_{0}+\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0} \Delta \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \\
& \lesssim\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-1}}\left\|\nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-2}}+\left\|\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{6}}\left\|\Delta \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{3}} \\
& \lesssim\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{2}}\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-1}}\left\|\nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

This together with (4.17) ensures that

$$
\begin{align*}
\sum_{\ell=1}^{s_{0}-2}\left|\Re_{\ell}\right| \lesssim & \left(\left\|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-2}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-2}}^{2}\right)  \tag{4.20}\\
& \times\left(\left\|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-1}}+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-1}}+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-1}}^{2}\right.
\end{align*}
$$

Inserting the estimate (4.20) into (4.16) leads to

$$
\begin{align*}
& \sum_{\ell=1}^{s_{0}-2} \frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}+\rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}-\left|\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell+1} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) d x  \tag{4.21}\\
& \quad \lesssim\left(\left\|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-1}}+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-1}}+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-1}}^{2}\right)\left(\left\|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-2}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \mathcal{T} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-2}}^{2}\right) .
\end{align*}
$$

Let us define three energy functionals of $\varphi_{0}$ as

$$
\begin{align*}
E_{s}(t) & \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left\|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{W^{s-1}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{W^{s-1}}^{2} ; \\
E_{s, \tan }(t) & \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \sum_{\ell=0}^{s-1}\left(\left\|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)}^{2}\right)  \tag{4.22}\\
\widetilde{E}_{s, \tan }(t) & \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \sum_{\ell=0}^{s-1} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}(t)\right|^{2}+\rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}(t)\right|^{2}-\left|\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) d x .
\end{align*}
$$

Then by summing up the estimates, (4.10), (4.13) and (4.21), we achieve

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} E_{s_{0}, \tan }(t) \leq C\left(1+E_{s_{0}}(t)\right) E_{s_{0}}^{\frac{3}{2}}(t) \tag{4.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $\delta>0$ being sufficiently small, which will be determined later on, we define

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{1}^{\star} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \sup \left\{t<T^{*}: E_{s_{0}}(t) \leq \delta\right\} \tag{4.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then for $t \leq T_{1}^{\star}$, we observe from (4.2) that there exits a positive constant $C_{0}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{0}^{-1} E_{s_{0}, \tan }(t) \leq \widetilde{E}_{s_{0}, \tan }(t) \leq C_{0} E_{s_{0}, \tan }(t) \tag{4.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

provided that $\delta$ is sufficiently small in (4.24).
Step 4. Full energy estimates
Let $E_{s}(t), E_{s, \tan }(t)$ be given by (4.22). We claim that

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\ell}(t) \leq C_{\ell} E_{\ell, \tan }(t) \quad \text { for } \quad t \leq T_{1}^{\star} \quad \text { and } \quad \ell=2, \cdots, s_{0}, \tag{4.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

provided that $\delta$ is sufficiently small in (4.24).
When $\ell=2$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{2}(t) \leq\left\|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2}+\left\|\partial_{t}^{2} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \varphi\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \varphi\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} . \tag{4.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

Yet in view of (4.4), we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial_{3}^{2} \varphi_{0}=\partial_{t}^{2} \varphi_{0}-\Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \varphi_{0}+\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\operatorname{div}\left(\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) \nabla \varphi_{0}\right), \tag{4.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

which implies that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \leq & \left\|\partial_{t}^{2} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+C\left(\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2}\left\|\nabla^{2} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right. \\
& \left.+\left(\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}+\left\|\Delta \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{3}}\right)\left\|\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right) \\
\leq & C\left(\left(1+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{2}}^{2}\right) E_{2, \text { tan }}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t)+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{2}}^{2}\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

So that as long as $\delta$ is sufficiently small in (4.24), we obtain

$$
\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \leq C E_{2, \tan }^{\frac{1}{2}}(t)
$$

Inserting the above estimate into (4.27) gives rise to

$$
E_{2}(t) \leq C E_{2, \tan }(t)
$$

This proves (4.26) for $\ell=2$.
Now we assume that (4.26) holds for $\ell=k$, we are going to prove that (4.26) holds for $\ell=k+1 \leq s_{0}$. We first notice by the definition that

$$
E_{k+1}(t) \leq \sum_{j=0}^{k}\left(\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{H^{k-j}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{j} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{H^{k-j}}^{2}\right)
$$

- When $j=k$.

We observe from (4.22) that

$$
\left\|\partial_{t}^{k+1} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{k} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \leq E_{k+1, \tan }(t)
$$

- When $j=k-1$.

It follows from (4.22) that

$$
\left\|\partial_{t}^{k} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2}=\left\|\partial_{t}^{k} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{k} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \leq E_{k+1, \tan }(t)
$$

Whereas notice that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{k-1} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2} & =\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{k-1} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla^{2} \partial_{t}^{k-1} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \\
& \leq\left\|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{W^{k-1}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{k-1} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \partial_{t}^{k-1} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

We deduce from (4.28) that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \partial_{t}^{k-1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \leq\left\|\partial_{t}^{k+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{k-1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\partial_{t}^{k-1}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \\
+\left\|\partial_{t}^{k-1} \operatorname{div}\left(\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Yet for $j \in[0, k-2]$, it follows from the law of product, Lemma 4.1, that

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}} & \leq\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k-1}}  \tag{4.29}\\
& \leq C\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k-1}}\left\|\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k-1}}
\end{align*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \operatorname{div}\left(\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}} & \leq\left\|\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) \nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}}  \tag{4.30}\\
& \leq C\left(\left\|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}}+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}}^{2}\right)\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}} .
\end{align*}
$$

Therefore, we obtain

$$
\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \partial_{t}^{k-1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \leq C\left(E_{k+1, \tan }^{\frac{1}{2}}(t)+\left(1+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}}\right)\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}} E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t)\right) .
$$

$\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{k-1} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{H^{1}}$ shares the same estimate.
As a result, it comes out

$$
\left\|\partial_{t}^{k} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{k-1} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2} \leq C\left(E_{k+1, \tan }(t)+\left(1+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}}^{2}\right)\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}}^{2} E_{k+1}(t)\right) .
$$

- When $k-j \geq 2$.

We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j}}^{2} & =\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-1}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla^{2} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}^{2} \\
& \leq\left\|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k-1}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}^{2}+\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

By virtue of (4.28), we find

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}} \leq\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+3} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}+\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}} \\
& \quad+\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}+\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \operatorname{div}\left(\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

which together with (4.29) and (4.30) ensures that

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j}} \leq & \left\|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k-1}}+\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}+\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+3} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}} \\
& +\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}+C\left(1+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}}\right)\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}} E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t) \tag{4.31}
\end{align*}
$$

In the case when $k-j \geq 3$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}} & =\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}+\left\|\nabla^{2} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}} \\
& \leq\left\|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k-1}}+\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}+\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Yet it follows from (4.28) that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}} \leq\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+3} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}+\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{3} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}} \\
& \quad+\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}+\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \operatorname{div}\left(\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}
\end{aligned}
$$

from which and (4.29), (4.30), we infer

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}} \leq & \left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+3} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}+\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{3} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}} \\
& +C\left(1+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}}\right)\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}} E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Inserting the above estimate into (4.31) gives rise to

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j}} \leq & 2\left\|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k-1}}+\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+3} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}+\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}} \\
& +\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}+\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+3} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}} \\
& +\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{3} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}+C\left(1+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}}\right)\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}} E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t) .
\end{aligned}
$$

By finite steps of iteration and using the inductive assumption for $\ell=k$, we deduce that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{H^{k-j}}^{2} \leq C_{k} E_{k+1, \tan }(t)+C\left(1+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}}^{2}\right)\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}}^{2} E_{k+1}(t) . \tag{4.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

The same estimate holds for $\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{j} \varphi_{0}(t)\right\|_{H^{k-j}}$.

Therefore we conclude that

$$
E_{k+1}(t) \leq C_{k}\left(E_{k+1, \tan }(t)+\left(1+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}}^{2}\right)\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{k}}^{2} E_{k+1}(t)\right) .
$$

Then in view of (4.24), as long as $\delta$ is small enough, we deduce (4.26) for $\ell=k+1$.
Now we are in a position to complete the proof of Theorem 4.1.
Thanks to (4.23) and (4.26), we obtain for $t \leq T_{1}^{\star}$ that

$$
\frac{d}{d t} \widetilde{E}_{s_{0}, \tan }(t) \leq C_{s_{0}} \sqrt{\delta} E_{s_{0} \tan }(t) \leq C_{s_{0}} C_{0} \sqrt{\delta} \widetilde{E}_{s_{0}, \tan }(t)
$$

where we used (4.25) in the last step. Applying Gronwall's inequality gives rise to

$$
\begin{align*}
\widetilde{E}_{s_{0}, \tan }(t) & \leq \widetilde{E}_{s_{0}, \tan }(0) \exp \left(C_{s_{0}} C_{0} \sqrt{\delta} t\right) \\
& \leq C_{0} E_{s_{0}, \tan }(0) \exp \left(C_{s_{0}} C_{0} \sqrt{\delta} t\right) . \tag{4.33}
\end{align*}
$$

On the other hand, we deduce from (4.4) and (4.8) that

$$
E_{s_{0}, \tan }(0) \leq C_{s_{0}}\left(\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}}+\left\|\varphi_{0,1}^{\mathrm{in}}\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}}\right)^{2} \leq C_{s_{0}} c_{0}^{2},
$$

which together with (4.33) ensures that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widetilde{E}_{s_{0}, \tan }(t) \leq C_{0} C_{s_{0}} c_{0}^{2} \exp \left(C_{s_{0}} C_{0} \sqrt{\delta} t\right) \quad \text { for } t \leq T_{1}^{\star} \tag{4.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us denote $\bar{T} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \min \left(T_{1}^{\star},\left(C_{0} C_{s_{0}} \sqrt{\delta}\right)^{-1}\right)$. If we assume by a contradict argument that $T_{1}^{\star}<\left(C_{0} C_{s_{0}} \sqrt{\delta}\right)^{-1}$, then for $t \leq \bar{T}=T_{1}^{\star}$, we deduce from (4.34) that

$$
\widetilde{E}_{s_{0}, \tan }(t) \leq C_{0} C_{s_{0}} c_{0}^{2} e,
$$

from which, and (4.26), we infer

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{s_{0}}(t) \leq C_{s_{0}} E_{s_{0}, \tan }(t) \leq C_{s_{0}} C_{0} \widetilde{E}_{s_{0}, \tan }(t) \leq C_{0}^{2} C_{s_{0}}^{2} e c_{0}^{2} \tag{4.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then as long as we take the positive $c_{0}$ to be so small that $C_{0}^{2} C_{s_{0}}^{2} e c_{0}^{2}=\frac{\delta}{2}$, we find

$$
E_{s_{0}}(t) \leq \frac{\delta}{2} \quad \text { for } t \leq \bar{T}=T_{1}^{\star} .
$$

This contradicts with the definition of $T_{1}^{\star}$ given by (4.24). This in turn shows that $T_{1}^{\star} \geq$ $\left(C_{0} C_{s_{0}} \sqrt{\delta}\right)^{-1}=\left(\sqrt{2 e} C_{0}^{2} C_{s_{0}}^{2} c_{0}\right)^{-1}$. This together with (4.35) completes the proof of Theorem 4.1.

Remark 4.1. We remark that it is crucial to apply $\mathcal{T}^{\ell}$ to (4.11), and then perform the energy estimate for the equation (4.14). Otherwise, let $\ell \in \mathbb{N}$, by applying the operator $\mathcal{T}^{\ell}$ to (4.3), we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial_{t}^{2} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}-\nabla \cdot\left(\rho_{0} \nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}\right)+\mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right)=\nabla \cdot\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \rho_{0}\right] \nabla \varphi_{0}\right) \tag{4.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

Due to $\left.\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}\right|_{z=0}=0$, by taking the $L^{2}$ inner product of (4.36) with $\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}$ and using integration by parts, we find

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}\right)^{2}+\rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) d x=\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \partial_{t} \rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2} d x \\
& \quad-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right)\left|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0} d x+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \nabla \cdot\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \rho_{0}\right] \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)\right| \partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0} d x \tag{4.37}
\end{align*}
$$

It is easy to observe that

$$
\begin{aligned}
-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right) \mid \partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0} d x= & \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \Delta \varphi_{0}\left(\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}\right)^{2} d x \\
& -\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0} \mid \partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0} d x
\end{aligned}
$$

Plugging the above equality into (4.37) and summing up the resulting inequalities for $\ell$ varying from 1 to $s_{0}-1$ yields

$$
\begin{align*}
& \sum_{\ell=1}^{s_{0}-1} \frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left|\mathcal{T}^{\ell} \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}+\rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}\right|^{2}\right) d x \\
& \lesssim \sum_{\ell=1}^{s_{0}-1}\left(\left\|\partial_{t} \rho_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\left\|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\Delta \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\left\|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right.  \tag{4.38}\\
& \left.\left.\quad+\left(\|\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right)\left\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\right\| \nabla \cdot\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \rho_{0}\right] \nabla \varphi_{0}\right) \|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right)\left\|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

Applying (4.19) gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{\ell=1}^{s_{0}-1}\left\|\nabla \cdot\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \rho_{0}\right] \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} & \lesssim\left\|\rho_{0}-1\right\|_{W^{s_{0}}}\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-1}} \\
& \lesssim\left(\left\|\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}}}+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}}}^{2}\right)\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s_{0}-1}}
\end{aligned}
$$

which make us impossible to close the estimate in (4.38).
Now let us present the proof of Proposition 3.1.
Proof of Proposition 3.1. We first deduce from (3.1) and (3.3) that (4.8) holds as long as $c$ is small enough in (3.3). Then it follows from Theorem 4.1 that (4.4-4.6) has a unique solution $\varphi_{0}$ on $\left[0, T_{0}\right]$ with $T_{0}=\mathcal{C} c_{0}^{-1}$ which satisfies (4.9) when we take $c_{0}=c$ in (4.8). Moreover, we deduce from (4.2) and Theorem 4.1 that

$$
1-\rho_{0}=\partial_{t} \varphi_{0}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right|^{2} \in W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-1}
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
& \rho_{0}(t, x)-1 \rightarrow 0 \quad \text { as } \quad|x| \rightarrow \infty \quad \text { and } \\
& \left\|\left(1-\rho_{0}\right)\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-1}} \leq C_{s_{0}}\left(1+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-1}}\right) E_{s_{0}}^{\frac{1}{2}}(t) \leq C_{s_{0}}\left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}} . \tag{4.39}
\end{align*}
$$

Let us define $a_{0} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \sqrt{\rho_{0}}$. Then we deduce from (4.39) that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& a_{0}(t, x)-1=\frac{\rho_{0}-1}{\sqrt{\rho_{0}}+1} \rightarrow 0 \quad \text { as } \quad|x| \rightarrow \infty \quad \text { and } \\
& \left\|\left(1-a_{0}\right)\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-1}} \leq C_{s_{0}}\left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

It is easy to observe that thus obtained $\left(a_{0}, \varphi_{0}\right)$ is indeed the unique solution of (2.4-2.5). Moreover there holds (3.4). This completes the proof of Proposition 3.1.

## 5. Solvability of the boundary layer equations (2.18-2.19)

The goal of this section is to prove the existence of smooth solutions to the boundary layer equations (2.18-2.19), namely the proof of Proposition 3.2.

Proof of Proposition 3.2. Once again, we shall only present the a priori estimates. In view of (2.18), we write

$$
\frac{1}{2}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right) \partial_{Z}\left(\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}+{\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi}}_{0}\right)+\partial_{Z}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)\left(\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}+\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)=0
$$

Multiplying the above equation by $A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}$ yields

$$
\partial_{Z}\left(\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}\left(\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}+\bar{\partial}_{z} \varphi_{0}\right)\right)=0
$$

which together with the boundary conditions $\left.A_{0}\right|_{Z=+\infty}=0=\left.\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}\right|_{Z=+\infty}$ ensures that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}\left(\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}+{\overline{\partial_{z}} \varphi_{0}}\right)=\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}{\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}}_{0} \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

On the other hand, we deduce from (2.19) that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} A_{0}= & \frac{1}{2}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)\left(\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}+{\overline{\partial_{z}} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2} \\
& -\frac{1}{2}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)\left(\overline{\partial z}_{\partial_{0}}\right)^{2}+A_{0}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)\left(A_{0}+2 \bar{a}_{0}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Inserting (5.1) into the above equation leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} A_{0}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{4}\left(\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{-3}-\frac{1}{2}\left(\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)+A_{0}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)\left(A_{0}+2 \bar{a}_{0}\right) \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us denote

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widetilde{A_{0}} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0} \quad \text { and } \quad q_{0} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \frac{d \widetilde{A_{0}}}{d Z} \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then under the assumption that $A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}>0$, (which we shall justify below), one has

$$
\partial_{Z}^{2} A_{0}=q_{0} \partial_{\widetilde{A_{0}}} q_{0},
$$

and it follows from (5.2) that

$$
\frac{1}{4} \frac{d q_{0}^{2}}{d \widetilde{A_{0}}}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{4}\left(\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2}{\widetilde{A_{0}}}^{-3}-\frac{1}{2}\left(\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2} \widetilde{A_{0}}+\widetilde{A_{0}}\left({\widetilde{A_{0}}}^{2}-\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}\right),
$$

from which, we infer

$$
\begin{equation*}
q_{0}^{2}=-\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{4}\left(\overline{\partial z}_{z}\right)^{2}{\widetilde{A_{0}}}^{-2}-\left(\overline{\partial z}_{z}\right)^{2}{\widetilde{A_{0}}}^{2}+{\widetilde{A_{0}}}^{4}-2\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}{\widetilde{A_{0}}}^{2}+C_{1}(t, y) . \tag{5.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thanks to the conditions $\left.\frac{d A_{0}}{d Z}\right|_{Z=+\infty}=\left.A_{0}\right|_{Z=+\infty}=0$, one gets

$$
0=-\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{4}\left({\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}}_{0}\right)^{2}\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{-2}-\left(2\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}+\left({\left.\left.\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2}\right)\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{4}+C_{1}(t, y), ~}_{\text {and }}\right.\right.
$$

which gives

$$
C_{1}(t, y)=\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}\left(\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}+2\left(\bar{\partial}_{z} \varphi_{0}\right)^{2}\right) .
$$

By inserting the above equality into (5.4) and multiplying the resulting equality by ${\widetilde{A_{0}}}^{2}$, we find

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\widetilde{A_{0}} \frac{d \widetilde{A_{0}}}{d Z}\right)^{2}= & \widetilde{A}_{0}^{6}-\left(2\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}+\left(\overline{\partial z}_{z}\right)^{2}\right) \widetilde{A}_{0}^{4} \\
& +\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}\left(\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}+2\left(\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2}\right) \widetilde{A}_{0}^{2}-\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{4}\left(\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

that is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{d{\widetilde{A_{0}}}^{2}}{d Z}\right)^{2}=\left({\widetilde{A_{0}}}^{2}-\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}\right)^{2}\left({\widetilde{A_{0}}}^{2}-\left(\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2}\right) \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Notice that according to Proposition 3.1, we have

$$
\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}-\left({\overline{\partial_{z}} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2} \geq \frac{1}{4}
$$

as long as $c$ is small enough in (3.3).
Let us denote

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{0} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left(\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}-\left(\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq \frac{1}{2} \quad \text { and } \quad B_{0} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left({\widetilde{A_{0}}}^{2}-\left({\overline{\partial_{z}} \varphi_{0}}^{2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\right. \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

in case of ${\widetilde{A_{0}}}^{2}-\left(\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2}>0$, which we shall justify later on.
By virtue of (5.5) and (5.6), we write

$$
\frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{d B_{0}^{2}}{d Z}\right)^{2}=\left(B_{0}^{2}-h_{0}^{2}\right)^{2} B_{0}^{2}
$$

that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d B_{0}}{d Z}= \pm\left(B_{0}^{2}-h_{0}^{2}\right) \tag{5.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

from which, we infer

$$
\frac{B_{0}-h_{0}}{B_{0}+h_{0}}=C_{2}(t, y) e^{ \pm 2 h_{0} Z}
$$

Since $B_{0}-h_{0}$ is rapidly decaying to zero as $Z \rightarrow+\infty$, we have

$$
\frac{B_{0}-h_{0}}{B_{0}+h_{0}}=C_{2}(t, y) e^{-2 h_{0} Z}
$$

which gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{0}=h_{0} \frac{1+C_{2}(t, y) e^{-2 h_{0} Z}}{1-C_{2}(t, y) e^{-2 h_{0} Z}} \tag{5.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

While according to the boundary condition (2.20), one has
which together with (5.8) ensures that

$$
\sqrt{1-\left(\bar{\partial}_{z} \varphi_{0}\right)^{2}}=h_{0} \frac{1+C_{2}(t, y)}{1-C_{2}(t, y)}
$$

As a result, it comes out

$$
\begin{aligned}
C_{2}(t, y) & =\frac{\sqrt{1-\left(\overline{\left.\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}\right)^{2}}-h_{0}\right.}}{\sqrt{1-\left(\bar{\partial}_{z} \varphi_{0}\right)^{2}}+h_{0}} \\
& =\frac{1-\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}}{\left(\sqrt{1-\left(\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2}}+h_{0}\right)^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

from which, Proposition 3.1 and trace theorem, we deduce that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|C_{2}(\cdot)\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-\frac{3}{2}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{2}\right)} \leq C\left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0,0}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}} \leq C c \tag{5.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Whereas it follows from (5.6) and (5.8) that

$$
\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}-\left(\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2}=h_{0}^{2}\left(\frac{1+C_{2} e^{-2 h_{0} Z}}{1-C_{2} e^{-2 h_{0} Z}}\right)^{2}
$$

which implies that

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{0} & =-\bar{a}_{0}+\left(\frac{\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}\left(1+C_{2}^{2} e^{-4 h_{0} Z}\right)+2 C_{2}\left(h_{0}^{2}-\left(\overline{\partial z}_{z}\right)^{2}\right) e^{-2 h_{0} Z}}{\left(1-C_{2}(t, y) e^{-2 h_{0} Z}\right)^{2}}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\
& =4 C_{2} h_{0}^{2} e^{-2 h_{0} Z}\left(\bar{a}_{0}+\left(\frac{\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}\left(1+C_{2}^{2} e^{-4 h_{0} Z}\right)+2 C_{2}\left(h_{0}^{2}-\left(\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2}\right) e^{-2 h_{0} Z}}{\left(1-C_{2} e^{-2 h_{0} Z}\right)^{2}}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} .\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

This together with (5.6) and (5.9) in particular shows that $A_{0} \in \mathcal{W}_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}-\frac{3}{2}}$, and there exists some positive constant $c_{1}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|A_{0}\right\|_{\mathcal{W}_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}-\frac{3}{2}}} \leq C\left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}} \quad \text { and } \quad A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0} \geq c_{1}>0 \tag{5.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then we rigorously justify that $B_{0}>0$ for $Z \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$as long as $c$ is small enough in (3.3).
With such $A_{0}$, in view of (5.1), we write

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}=\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{-2}\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}{\overline{\partial_{z}} \varphi_{0}}-\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}} \\
\Phi_{1} \mid Z=+\infty=0
\end{array}\right.
$$

It is easy to observe from the above equation that

$$
\Phi_{1}(Z)=-\bar{\partial}_{z} \varphi_{0} \int_{Z}^{\infty} \frac{A_{0}\left(A_{0}+2 \bar{a}_{0}\right)}{\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}} d Z
$$

which together with (5.10) shows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\Phi_{1}\right\|_{\mathcal{W}_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}-\frac{3}{2}}} \leq C\left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}}^{2} \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

This ends the proof of Proposition 3.2.

## 6. The existence of solutions to a linear wave equation

The goal of this section is to present the proof of Theorem 3.1. Let $\chi(\tau) \in C_{c}^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})$ with $\chi(\tau)=1$ in a neighborhood of 0 . We denote

$$
\begin{equation*}
G \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \chi\left(z\left(1+\left|D_{\mathrm{h}}\right|^{2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\right) g(t, \cdot) \quad \text { and } \quad \varphi=\phi+G . \tag{6.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then one has $G \in W_{T}^{s+1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$, and $\phi$ verifies

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
P\left(\varphi_{0}, D\right) \phi=-P\left(\varphi_{0}, D\right) G+f \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} F \in W_{T}^{s-1}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right),  \tag{6.2}\\
\left.\varphi\right|_{z=0}=0, \\
\left.\phi\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{, 0}^{\text {in }}-\left.G\right|_{t=0} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \phi_{0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \quad \text { and }\left.\quad \partial_{t} \varphi\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{, 1}^{\mathrm{in}}-\left.\partial_{t} G\right|_{t=0} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \phi_{1}^{\mathrm{in}}
\end{array}\right.
$$

And the proof of Theorem 3.1 is reduced to the following one:
Theorem 6.1. Let $T \leq T_{0}$ and $4 \leq$ be an integer. Let $F \in W_{T}^{s-1}$ and ( $\left.\phi_{0}^{\text {in }}, \phi_{1}^{\text {in }}\right)$ satisfy $\nabla \phi_{0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \phi_{1}^{\mathrm{in}} \in H^{s-1}$ and the compatibility condition that $\partial_{t}^{\ell} \phi(0, y, 0)=0$ for $\ell=0, \cdots, s-1$. Then under the assumptions of Proposition 3.1, (6.2) has a unique solution $\phi$ on $[0, T]$, which satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\left(\partial_{t} \phi, \nabla \phi\right)\right\|_{W_{T}^{s-1}} \leq C\left(\|g\|_{W_{T}^{s+\frac{1}{2}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{2}\right)}+\left\|\left(\nabla \phi_{0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \phi_{1}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s-1}}+\|F\|_{W_{T}^{s-1}}\right) . \tag{6.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

In what follows, we shall always denote $E_{s}(\phi), E_{s, \tan }(\phi)$, and $\widetilde{E}_{s, \tan }(\phi)$ to be the energy functionals determined by (4.22).

Let us separate the proof of Theorem 6.1 into the following lemmas:

Lemma 6.1. Let $\phi$ be a smooth enough solution of (6.2) on $[0, T]$. Then for $t \leq T$, one has

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(\partial_{t} \phi\right)^{2}+\rho_{0}|\nabla \phi|^{2}-\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \phi\right)^{2}\right) d x \leq C\left(1+E_{4}\left(\varphi_{0}\right)\right) E_{1}(\phi(t))+\|F\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \tag{6.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. By taking $L^{2}$ inner product of the $\phi$ equation of (6.2) with $\partial_{t} \phi$ and using integration by parts, one has

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(\partial_{t} \phi\right)^{2}+\rho_{0}|\nabla \phi|^{2}-\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \phi\right)^{2}\right) d x \\
& \quad=\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\frac{1}{2} \partial_{t} \rho_{0}|\nabla \phi|^{2}-\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \phi\right)\left(\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \phi\right)+\left(\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \phi\right) \partial_{t} \phi+F \partial_{t} \phi\right) d x  \tag{6.5}\\
& \quad \leq C\left(1+\left\|\partial_{t}^{2} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}+\left(1+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right)\left\|\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right)\left(\left\|\partial_{t} \phi\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\|\nabla \phi\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right)+\|F\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2},
\end{align*}
$$

from which, and (4.22), we deduce (6.4).
Lemma 6.2 (High-order tangential derivatives estimates). Let $\phi$ be a smooth enough solution of (6.2) on $[0, T]$. Then for $t \leq T$, one has

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} \widetilde{E}_{s, \tan }(\phi(t)) \lesssim\left(1+E_{s+1}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right)\right) E_{s}(\phi(t))+\sum_{\ell=0}^{s-1}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell} F\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \tag{6.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. Let $\ell \leq s-1$ be an integer. By applying the operator $\mathcal{T}^{\ell}$ (with $\mathcal{T}=\left(\partial_{t}, \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}\right)$ and $\mathcal{T}^{\ell}=\partial_{t}^{\alpha_{1}} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{\alpha_{2}}$ for $\alpha_{1}+\left|\alpha_{2}\right|=\ell \in \mathbb{N}$ ) to the $\phi$ equation in (6.2), we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
P\left(\varphi_{0}, D\right) \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \phi=-\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; P\left(\varphi_{0}, D\right)\right] \phi+\mathcal{T}^{\ell} F \tag{6.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
{\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; P\left(\varphi_{0}, D\right)\right] \phi=} & -\operatorname{div}\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \rho_{0}\right] \nabla \phi\right)+2\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \phi \\
& +\sum_{k=1}^{3} \operatorname{div}\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \partial_{k} \varphi_{0} \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \partial_{k} \phi\right)+\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right] \nabla \phi+\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell}, \Delta \varphi_{0}\right] \partial_{t} \phi
\end{aligned}
$$

Due to $\left.\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \phi\right|_{z=0}=0$, by taking the $L^{2}$ inner product of (6.7) with $\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \phi$, we deduce from (6.5) that

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \phi\right)^{2}+\rho_{0}\left|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \phi\right|^{2}-\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \phi\right)^{2}\right) d x \\
& \lesssim\left(\left\|\partial_{t} \rho_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}+\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\left\|\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right)\left\|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \phi\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}  \tag{6.8}\\
& \quad+\left(\left\|\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\left\|\nabla \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \phi\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; P\left(\varphi_{0}, D\right)\right] \phi\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell} F\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right)\left\|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \phi\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} .
\end{align*}
$$

It follows from (4.19) that

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sum_{\ell=1}^{s-1}\left\|\operatorname{div}\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \rho_{0}\right] \nabla \phi\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim\left\|\rho_{0}-1\right\|_{W^{s}}\|\nabla \phi\|_{W^{s-1}} \\
\sum_{\ell=1}^{s-1}\left\|\operatorname{div}\left(\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \partial_{k} \varphi_{0} \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \partial_{k} \phi\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s}}^{2}\|\nabla \phi\|_{W^{s-1}} . \\
22
\end{gathered}
$$

For $s \geq 4$, we get, by applying Lemma 4.1, that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \sum_{\ell=1}^{s-1}\left\|\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \varphi_{0}\right] \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \phi\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim\left\|\nabla \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s-1}}\left\|\nabla \partial_{t} \phi\right\|_{W^{s-2}} \\
& \sum_{\ell=1}^{s-1}\left\|\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right] \nabla \phi\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim\left\|\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s-1}}\|\nabla \phi\|_{W^{s-2}}, \\
& \sum_{\ell=1}^{s-1}\left\|\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell}, \Delta \varphi_{0}\right] \partial_{t} \phi\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim\left\|\Delta \varphi_{0}\right\|_{W^{s-1}}\left\|\partial_{t} \phi\right\|_{W^{s-2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

This gives rise to

$$
\sum_{\ell=1}^{s-1}\left\|\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; P\left(\varphi_{0}, D\right)\right] \phi\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim E_{1+s}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right)\left(1+E_{1+s}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right)\right) E_{s}^{\frac{1}{2}}(\phi(t))
$$

Inserting the above estimate into (6.8) gives (6.6). This completes the proof of the lemma.
Lemma 6.3 (Full energy estimates). Let $\phi$ be a smooth enough solution of (6.2) on $[0, T]$. Then for $t \leq T$, one has

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} \widetilde{E}_{s, \tan }(\phi(t)) \lesssim\left(1+E_{s+1}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right)\right) E_{s, \tan }(\phi(t))+\|F\|_{W^{s-1}}^{2} \tag{6.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. Let $E_{s}(\phi), E_{s, \tan }(\phi)$, and $\widetilde{E}_{s, \tan }(\phi)$ be determined by (4.22). Along the same line to the proof of (4.26), we claim that

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{\ell}(\phi(t)) \leq C_{\ell}\left(E_{\ell, \tan }(\phi(t))+\|F(t)\|_{W^{\ell-2}}^{2}\right) \quad \text { for } \quad t \leq T \quad \text { and } \quad \ell=2, \cdots, s \tag{6.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

In what follows, we just outline the proof.
We first observe from (6.2) that

$$
\begin{align*}
\left(\rho_{0}-\left(\partial_{3} \varphi_{0}\right)^{2}\right) \partial_{3}^{2} \phi= & \partial_{t}^{2} \phi-\rho_{0} \Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \phi-\nabla \rho_{0} \cdot \nabla \phi+2 \nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \partial_{t} \phi+\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \phi\right) \Delta \varphi_{0} \\
& +\Delta \varphi_{0} \partial_{t} \phi+\sum_{j=1}^{3}\left(\nabla \partial_{j} \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \phi\right) \partial_{j} \varphi_{0}+\left(\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \varphi_{0} \cdot \partial_{3} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \phi\right) \partial_{3} \varphi_{0}  \tag{6.11}\\
& +\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \nabla \phi\right) \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \varphi_{0}+\nabla \partial_{t} \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \phi-F
\end{align*}
$$

from which, we infer

$$
E_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}}(\phi(t)) \lesssim E_{2, \tan }^{\frac{1}{2}}(\phi(t))+E_{4}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right)\left(1+E_{4}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right)\right) E_{2}^{\frac{1}{2}}(\phi(t))+\|F\|_{L_{+}^{2}}
$$

This together with (3.4) ensures that

$$
\begin{equation*}
E_{2}(\phi(t)) \lesssim E_{2, \tan }(\phi(t))+\|F\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} . \tag{6.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

This proves (6.10) for $\ell=2$.
Now we assume that (6.10) holds for $\ell=k$, we are going to prove that (6.10) holds for $\ell=k+1 \leq s$. We first notice that

$$
E_{k+1}(\phi(t)) \leq \sum_{j=0}^{k}\left(\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi(t)\right\|_{H^{k-j}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{j} \phi(t)\right\|_{H^{k-j}}^{2}\right)
$$

- When $j=k$.

We observe from (4.22) that

$$
\left\|\partial_{t}^{k+1} \phi(t)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{k} \phi(t)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \leq E_{k+1, \tan }(\phi(t))
$$

- When $j=k-1$.

It follows from (4.22) that

$$
\left\|\partial_{t}^{k} \phi\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2}=\left\|\partial_{t}^{k} \phi\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{k} \phi\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \leq E_{k+1, \tan }(\phi(t)) .
$$

Whereas notice that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{k-1} \phi(t)\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2} & =\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{k-1} \phi(t)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla^{2} \partial_{t}^{k-1} \phi(t)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \\
& \lesssim\left\|\partial_{t} \phi\right\|_{W^{k-1}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{k-1} \phi(t)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \partial_{t}^{k-1} \phi(t)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Similar to the proofs of (4.29) and (4.30), we deduce from (6.11) that $\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \partial_{t}^{k-1} \phi\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \leq C\left(E_{k+1, \tan }^{\frac{1}{2}}(\phi(t))+\left(1+E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right)\right) E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right) E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}(\phi(t))\right)+\left\|\partial_{t}^{k-1} F\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}$.
$\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{k-1} \phi(t)\right\|_{H^{1}}$ shares the same estimate.
As a result, it comes out
$\left\|\partial_{t}^{k} \phi\right\|_{H^{1}}+\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{k-1} \phi(t)\right\|_{H^{1}} \leq C\left(E_{k+1, \tan }^{\frac{1}{2}}(\phi(t))+E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right) E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}(\phi(t))\right)+\left\|\partial_{t}^{k-1} F\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}$.

- When $k-j \geq 2$.

We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j}}^{2} & =\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-1}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla^{2} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}^{2} \\
& \lesssim\left\|\partial_{t} \phi\right\|_{W^{k-1}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}^{2}+\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

By virtue of (6.11), we find

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}} \lesssim\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+3} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}+\left\|\partial_{t} \phi\right\|_{W^{k-1}}+\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}} \\
& +\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}+\left(1+E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right)\right) E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right) E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}(\phi(t))+\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} F\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}} \tag{6.13}
\end{align*}
$$

The same estimate holds for $\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j}}$.
In the case when $k-j \geq 3$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}^{2} & =\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla^{2} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}^{2} \\
& \lesssim\left\|\partial_{t} \phi\right\|_{W^{k-1}}^{2}+\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}^{2}+\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Yet it follows from (6.11) and Lemma 4.1 that

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\left\|\partial_{3}^{2} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}} \lesssim\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+3} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}+\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{3} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}} \\
&+\left(1+E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right)\right) E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right) E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}(\phi(t))+\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+1} F\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Inserting the above estimate into (6.13) gives rise to

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j}} \lesssim & \left\|\partial_{t} \phi\right\|_{W^{k-1}}+\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+3} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}}+\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-2}} \\
& +\left\|\nabla \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2} \partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}+\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{t}^{j+3} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}}+\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{3} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j-3}} \\
& +C\left(1+E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right)\right) E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right) E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}(\phi(t))+\|F\|_{W^{k-1}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

By finite steps of iteration and using the inductive assumption for $\ell=k$, we deduce that

$$
\left\|\partial_{t}^{j+1} \phi\right\|_{H^{k-j}} \leq C_{k}\left(E_{k+1, \tan }^{\frac{1}{2}}(\phi(t))+\|F\|_{W^{k-1}}\right)+C E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\varphi_{0}(t)\right) E_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}(\phi(t)) .
$$

The same estimate holds for $\left\|\nabla \partial_{t}^{j} \phi(t)\right\|_{H^{k-j}}$.
Therefore, by virtue of (3.4), we conclude that

$$
E_{k+1}(t) \leq C_{k}\left(E_{k+1, \tan }(\phi(t))+\|F\|_{W^{k-1}}^{2}\right) .
$$

This proves (6.10) for $\ell=k+1$. By combining (6.6) with (6.10), we achieve (6.9). This completes the proof of Lemma 6.3.

Proof of Theorem 6.1. By applying Gronwall's inequality to (6.9) and using (6.10), we deduce (6.3). This completes the proof of Theorem 6.1.

## 7. The existence of solutions to the other asymptotic equations

Let us first present the proof of Proposition 3.3.
Proof of Proposition 3.3. It follows from (2.21) and Proposition 3.2 that

$$
\left.\varphi_{1}\right|_{z=0}=-\left.\Phi_{1}\right|_{Z=0} \in W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-\frac{3}{2}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{2}\right)
$$

Then we deduce from Theorem 3.1 that the wave equation (3.9) with boundary condition (2.21) and initial condition (3.11) has a unique solution $\varphi_{1}$ on $\left[0, T_{0}\right]$. Furthermore, we have

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\|\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{1}, \nabla \varphi_{1}\right)\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-3}} & \leq C\left(\left\|\left(\nabla \varphi_{1,0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \varphi_{1,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-3}}+\left\|\left.\Phi_{1}\right|_{z=0}\right\|_{W_{T}^{s_{0}-\frac{3}{2}}}\right)  \tag{7.1}\\
& \leq C\left(\left\|\left(a_{1,0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \nabla \varphi_{1,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-3}}+\left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}}\right) .
\end{align*}
$$

Note from the $\varphi_{1}$ equation of (2.6) that

$$
a_{1}=-\frac{1}{2 a_{0}}\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{1}+\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{1}\right),
$$

from which, (7.1) and Lemma 4.1, we deduce (3.12). This completes the proof of the proposition.

Next let us present the proof of Proposition 3.4.
Proof of Proposition 3.4. Inductively, we assume that we already have

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left(a_{0}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0}\right) \in W_{T_{0}-1}^{s_{0}-1}, \quad\left(a_{j+1}, \nabla \varphi_{j+1}\right) \in W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-1-2(j+1)} \quad \text { and } \\
& \left(A_{j}, \Phi_{j+1}\right) \in W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}-2(j+1)+\frac{1}{2}} \quad \text { for } \quad j=0, \cdots, k \tag{7.2}
\end{align*}
$$

we consider the boundary layer problem (2.22-2.23) with boundary condition (2.24). We first get, by inserting (5.1) into (2.23), that

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{1}{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} A_{k+1}= & \frac{\bar{a}_{0}^{2} \overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}}{A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{k+2}+G_{k}  \tag{7.3}\\
& +\left(3 A_{0}^{2}+6 \bar{a}_{0} A_{0}+2 \bar{a}_{0}^{2}+\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}{\overline{\partial_{z}} \varphi_{0}}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}\right|^{2}\right) A_{k+1}
\end{align*}
$$

Here according to (7.2) and (A.2) in the Appendix A, $G_{k} \in W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0, k}}$, where and in what follows, we always denote

$$
s_{0, k} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} s_{0}-2(k+2)+\frac{1}{2} .
$$

Whereas by multiplying (2.22) by $\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)$, we find

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{2} \partial_{Z}\left(\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{k+2}\right) & +\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)\left(\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}+\bar{\partial}_{z} \varphi_{0}\right) \partial_{Z} A_{k+1} \\
& +\frac{1}{2} A_{k+1}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right) \partial_{Z}^{2} \Phi_{1}=\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right) F_{k}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $F_{k} \in W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0, k}}$ according to (7.2) and (A.1) in the Appendix A,
Then we deduce from (2.18) that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{2} \partial_{Z}\left(\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{k+2}\right) & +\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)\left(\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}+\bar{\partial}_{z} \varphi_{0}\right) \partial_{Z} A_{k+1} \\
& -A_{k+1}\left(\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}+\bar{\partial}_{z} \varphi_{0}\right) \partial_{Z} A_{0}=\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right) F_{k}
\end{aligned}
$$

By virtue of (5.1), we write

$$
\frac{1}{2} \partial_{Z}\left(\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{k+2}\right)+\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2} \bar{\partial}_{z} \varphi_{0}\left(\frac{\partial_{Z} A_{k+1}}{A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}}-\frac{A_{k+1} \partial_{Z} A_{0}}{\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}}\right)=\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right) F_{k}
$$

that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial_{Z}\left(\frac{1}{2}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{k+2}+\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2} \bar{\partial}_{z} \varphi_{0} \frac{A_{k+1}}{A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}}\right)=\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right) F_{k} . \tag{7.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating (7.4) over [ $Z, \infty[$ gives rise to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial_{Z} \Phi_{k+2}=-2\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2} \bar{\partial}_{z} \varphi_{0} \frac{A_{k+1}}{\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{3}}+\frac{2}{\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}} \int_{Z}^{\infty}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right) F_{k} d Z^{\prime} . \tag{7.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Plugging (7.5) into (7.3) leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial_{Z}^{2} A_{k+1}=\mathfrak{g} A_{k+1}+\widetilde{G}_{k}, \tag{7.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here and in all that follows, we always denote

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathfrak{g} & \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} 6 A_{0}^{2}+12 \bar{a}_{0} A_{0}+4 \bar{a}_{0}^{2}+2 \partial_{Z} \Phi_{1} \bar{\partial}_{z} \varphi_{0} \\
& \left|\partial_{Z} \Phi_{1}\right|^{2}-4 \frac{\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{4}\left(\overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}\right)^{2}}{\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{4}},  \tag{7.7}\\
\widetilde{G}_{k} & \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} 2 G_{k}+\frac{4 \bar{a}_{0}^{2} \overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{0}}}{\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{3}} \int_{Z}^{\infty}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right) F_{k} d Z^{\prime} \in W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}} .
\end{align*}
$$

Recalling the notation from (2.11) that $\bar{a}_{k+1}(y)=a_{k+1}(y, 0)$, we reduce the resolution of the problem (2.22), (2.23) and (2.24) to the following system

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\partial_{Z}^{2} A_{k+1}=\mathfrak{g} A_{k+1}+\widetilde{G}_{k},  \tag{7.8}\\
\partial_{Z} \Phi_{k+2}=-\frac{2\left(\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2} \overline{z z}_{0},}{\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{3}} A_{k+1}+\frac{2}{\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right)^{2}} \int_{Z}^{\infty}\left(A_{0}+\bar{a}_{0}\right) F_{k} d Z^{\prime}, \\
\left.A_{k+1}\right|_{Z=0}=-\bar{a}_{k+1},\left.\quad A_{k+1}\right|_{Z=+\infty}=0,\left.\quad \Phi_{k+2}\right|_{Z=+\infty}=0 .
\end{array}\right.
$$

Let's now handle the system (7.8). In order to do it, let $\widetilde{A}_{k+1} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} A_{k+1}+e^{-3 Z} \bar{a}_{k+1}$. Then $\widetilde{A}_{k+1}$ verifies

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\partial_{Z}^{2} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}=\mathfrak{g} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}+\widetilde{G}_{k}-(9+\mathfrak{g}) e^{-3 Z} \bar{a}_{k+1},  \tag{7.9}\\
\widetilde{A}_{k+1}\left|Z=0=0, \quad \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right| Z=+\infty=0
\end{array}\right.
$$

By applying the operator $\mathcal{T}^{\ell}$ (recalling that $\mathcal{T}=\left(\partial_{t}, \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}\right)$ ) with $\ell \in\left[0,\left[s_{0, k}\right]\right]$ to the equation (7.9), and then taking the $L^{2}$ inner product of the resulting equation with $-e^{2 Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\left\|e^{Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \partial_{Z} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}-2\left\|e^{Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}=-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(\mathfrak{g} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right) \mid e^{2 Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \widetilde{A}_{k+1} d y d Z \\
&-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(\widetilde{G}_{k}-(9+\mathfrak{g}) e^{-3 Z} \bar{a}_{k+1}\right) \mid e^{2 Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \widetilde{A}_{k+1} d y d Z
\end{aligned}
$$

Notice that

$$
\begin{aligned}
-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(\mathfrak{g} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right) \mid e^{2 Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \widetilde{A}_{k+1} d y d Z= & -\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathfrak{g}\left|e^{Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right|^{2} d y d Z \\
& -\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} e^{Z}\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \mathfrak{g}\right] \widetilde{A}_{k+1} \mid e^{Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \widetilde{A}_{k+1} d y d Z
\end{aligned}
$$

we infer

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|e^{Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \partial_{Z} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}(\mathfrak{g}-2)\left|e^{Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right|^{2} d y d Z \\
& \quad \leq\left\|e^{Z}\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \mathfrak{g}\right] \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|e^{Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+C\left(\left\|\widetilde{G}_{k}\right\|_{W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}}}\right. \\
& \left.\quad+\left\|e^{-2 Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(\bar{a}_{k+1}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|e^{-2 Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(\mathfrak{g} \bar{a}_{k+1}\right)\right\|_{L^{2}+}\right)\left\|e^{Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Whereas it follows from (3.4), (3.13) and (7.7) that $\mathfrak{g}-2 \geq 2-\|\mathfrak{g}-4\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}} \geq \frac{3}{2}$ as long as $c$ is small enough in (3.3). So that we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|e^{Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \partial_{Z} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} & +\left\|e^{Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \lesssim\left\|e^{Z}\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell}, \mathfrak{g}\right] \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \\
& \left.+\left\|\widetilde{G}_{k}\right\|_{W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0, k}}}^{2}+\| e^{-2 Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \bar{a}_{k+1}\right)\left\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\right\| e^{-2 Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(\mathfrak{g} \bar{a}_{k+1}\right) \|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

We deduce from trace theorem and the proof of Lemma 4.1 that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|e^{Z}\left[\mathcal{T}^{\ell} ; \mathfrak{g}\right] \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim\|\mathcal{T} \mathfrak{g}\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(W_{T_{0}}^{\left[s_{0}, k\right]-1}\right)_{\mathrm{h}}}\left\|e^{Z} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{2}\left(\left(W_{T_{0}}^{\left[s_{0, k}\right]}\right)_{\mathrm{h}}\right.}, \\
& \left\|e^{-2 Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(\mathfrak{g} \bar{a}_{k+1}\right)\right\|_{L^{2}+} \lesssim\|\mathfrak{g}\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{2}\left(W_{T_{0}}^{\left[s_{0}, k\right]}\right)_{\mathrm{h}}}\left\|a_{k+1}\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{\left[s_{0}, k\right]+\frac{1}{2}}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|e^{Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \partial_{Z} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\frac{5}{4}\left\|e^{Z} \mathcal{T}^{\ell} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \\
& \left.\quad \lesssim\left(\left\|\left(a_{0}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-1}}^{2}+\left\|\left(A_{0}, \Phi_{1}\right)\right\|_{W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}-\frac{3}{2}}}^{2}\right)\left\|e^{Z} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{2}\left(\left(W_{T_{0}}^{\left[s_{0}, k\right]}\right)\right.}\right)_{\mathrm{h}} \\
& \quad+\left\|\widetilde{G}_{k}\right\|_{W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0, k}}}^{2}+\left\|a_{k+1}\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0, k}}}^{2}\left(1+\left\|\left(a_{0}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-1}}^{2}+\left\|\left(A_{0}, \Phi_{1}\right)\right\|_{W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}-\frac{3}{2}}}^{2}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

In view of (3.4) and (3.13), we get, by summing the above inequality for $\ell$ from 0 to $\left[s_{0, k}\right]$, that

$$
\left\|e^{Z} \partial_{Z} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{\mathbf{v}}^{2}\left(\left(W_{T_{0}}^{\left[s_{0}, k\right]}\right)_{\mathrm{h}}\right.}^{2}+\left\|e^{Z} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{\mathbf{v}}^{2}\left(\left(W_{T_{0}}^{\left[s_{0}, k\right]}\right)_{\mathrm{h}}\right.}^{2} \lesssim\left\|\widetilde{G}_{k}\right\|_{W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0, k}}}^{2}+\left\|a_{k+1}\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}, k}}^{2}
$$

which in particular implies that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|e^{Z} \widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(\left(W_{T_{0}}^{\left[s_{0}, k\right]}\right)_{\mathrm{h}}\right.}^{2} \lesssim\left\|\widetilde{G}_{k}\right\|_{W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}, k}}^{2}+\left\|a_{k+1}\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0, k}}}^{2} . \tag{7.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

In general by apply $\partial_{Z}^{k}$ for $k \leq\left[s_{0, k}\right]$ and performing the above energy estimate, we achieve

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\widetilde{A}_{k+1}\right\|_{W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0, k}}}^{2} \lesssim\left\|\widetilde{G}_{k}\right\|_{W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}, k}}^{2}+\left\|a_{k+1}\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0, k}}}^{2} . \tag{7.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

With the above estimate, we deduce from the second equation of (7.8) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\Phi_{k+2}\right\|_{W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}}}^{2} \lesssim\left\|\widetilde{G}_{k}\right\|_{W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}}}^{2}+\left\|F_{k}\right\|_{W_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}}}^{2} \tag{7.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thanks to the definitions of $\widetilde{A}_{k+1}, \widetilde{G}_{k}$, and $F_{k}, G_{k}$ in Appendix A, we deduce (3.13). This ends the proof of Proposition 3.4.

Finally let us present the proof of Proposition 3.5.

Proof of Proposition 3.5. We first observe from the $\varphi_{k+2}$ equation of (2.7) that

$$
\begin{align*}
\left.\partial_{t} \varphi_{k+2}\right|_{t=0} & =-\left.\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{k+2}\right|_{t=0}-\left.2 a_{0} a_{k+2}\right|_{t=0}+\left.\frac{1}{2 a_{0}}\left(\Delta a_{k}+g_{k+1}^{\varphi}\right)\right|_{t=0} \\
& =-\nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{k+2,0}^{\text {in }}-2 a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}} a_{k+2,0}^{\text {in }}+\frac{1}{2 a_{0,0}^{\text {in }}}\left(\Delta a_{k, 0}^{\text {in }}+\left.g_{k+1}^{\varphi}\right|_{t=0}\right)  \tag{7.13}\\
& \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \varphi_{k+2,1}^{\text {in }} \in W_{T_{0}}^{\bar{s}_{0, k}} \quad \text { with } \quad \bar{s}_{0, k} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} s_{0}-1-2(k+2) \geq 2,
\end{align*}
$$

we are going to inductively solve the linear equations (2.7) with the initial-boundary conditions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\varphi_{k+2}\right|_{z=0}=-\left.\Phi_{k+2}\right|_{Z=0},\left.\quad \varphi_{k+2}\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{k+2,0}^{\mathrm{in}} \quad \text { and }\left.\quad \partial_{t} \varphi_{k+2}\right|_{t=0}=\varphi_{k+2,1}^{\mathrm{in}} . \tag{7.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

In fact, according to the first equation in (2.4) and (2.7), we write

$$
\partial_{t}\left(a_{0} a_{k+2}\right)+\operatorname{div}\left(a_{0} a_{k+2} \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)+\frac{1}{2} \operatorname{div}\left(\rho_{0} \nabla \varphi_{k+2}\right)=a_{0} f_{k+1}^{a} .
$$

By taking $\partial_{t}$ to the the $\varphi_{k+1}$ equation of (2.7) and inserting the above equation into the resulting one, we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
& \partial_{t}^{2} \varphi_{k+2}-\operatorname{div}\left(\rho_{0} \nabla \varphi_{k+2}\right)+\partial_{t}\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{k+2}\right) \\
& \quad+\operatorname{div}\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{k+2} \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)+\operatorname{div}\left(\left(\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{k}\right) \nabla \varphi_{0}\right)  \tag{7.15}\\
& =-2 a_{0} f_{k+1}^{a}+\partial_{t}\left(\frac{1}{2 a_{0}}\left(\Delta a_{k}+g_{k+1}^{\varphi}\right)\right)+\operatorname{div}\left(\frac{1}{2 a_{0}}\left(\Delta a_{k}+g_{k+1}^{\varphi}\right) \nabla \varphi_{0}\right) \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} F_{k+2} .
\end{align*}
$$

Note that $F_{k+2}$ belongs to $W_{T_{0}}^{\bar{s}_{0}, k}$ according to the definitions of $f_{k+1}^{a}$ and $g_{k+1}^{\varphi}$ in (2.8). Then we deduce from Theorem 3.1 that the system (7.15) with the boundary condition (2.25) has a unique solution $\varphi_{k+2}$ so that

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\|\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{k+2}, \nabla \varphi_{k+2}\right)\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{\bar{s}_{0}, k}} & \leq C\left(\left\|\left(\nabla \varphi_{k+2,0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \varphi_{k+2,1}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{\bar{s}_{0, k}}}+\| \Phi_{k+2} \mid Z=0\right.  \tag{7.16}\\
& \leq C\left(\left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1, \nabla \varphi_{W_{T}}^{s_{0, k}}+\left\|F_{k+2}\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{\overline{\mathrm{i}}_{0}, k}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}}+\sum_{j=1}^{k+2}\left\|\left(a_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \nabla \varphi_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-2 j-1}}\right) .
\end{align*}
$$

With $\varphi_{k+2}$ thus obtained, it follows from the $a_{k+2}$ equation of (2.7) and Lemma 4.1 that

$$
a_{k+2}=\frac{1}{2 a_{0}}\left(\frac{1}{2 a_{0}}\left(\Delta a_{k}+g_{k+1}^{\varphi}\right)-\partial_{t} \varphi_{k+2}-\nabla \varphi_{0} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{k+2}\right) \in W_{T_{0}}^{\bar{s}_{0, k}}
$$

in case $\bar{s}_{0, k} \geq 2$. Moreover, there holds

$$
\left\|\left\|a_{k+2}\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0, k}}} \leq C\left(\left\|\left(a_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}-1, \nabla \varphi_{0,0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-1}}+\sum_{j=1}^{k+2}\left\|\left(a_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}, \nabla \varphi_{j, 0}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-2 j-1}}\right)\right.
$$

This completes the proof of (3.14).

## 8. Some technical lemmas

Let $\left.\left(a^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}, \varphi^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}\right)\right)$ and $\left.\left(a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}, \varphi^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right)\right)$ be determined by (3.15), we denote

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathcal{E}_{m, T} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left\|\left(a^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}-1, \partial_{t} \varphi^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}, \nabla \varphi^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}\right)\right\|_{W_{T}^{s_{0}-2 m-5}}^{2}+\left\|\left(a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}, \varphi^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right)\right\|_{W_{1, T}^{s_{0}-2 m-\frac{7}{2}}}^{2},  \tag{8.1}\\
& u^{\varepsilon, m} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \nabla \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}, \quad \mathcal{S}_{f}(g) \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} f \cdot \nabla g+\frac{1}{2} g \nabla \cdot f, \quad \mathcal{T} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left(\partial_{t}, \nabla_{\mathrm{h}}\right) .
\end{align*}
$$

Then thanks to Propositions 3.1-3.5, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{E}_{m, T} \leq C \mathcal{E}_{0} \tag{8.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $\mathcal{E}_{0}$ being given by (3.16).
Lemma 8.1. Let $s_{0} \geq 2 m+9$ be an integer and $a^{\varepsilon, m}$ be defined by (3.15). Let $f$ and $g$ be smooth enough functions satisfying the homogeneous boundary conditions $\left.f\right|_{z=0}=\left.g\right|_{z=0}=0$. Then one has

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varepsilon^{2}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} f g d x\right| \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\|\varepsilon f\|_{H^{1}}\|\varepsilon g\|_{H^{1}} \quad \text { and } \quad \varepsilon^{2}\left\|\frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\|\varepsilon f\|_{H^{1}} \tag{8.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

if $j \in\left[0, s_{0}-2 m-9\right]$, we also have

$$
\begin{align*}
& \varepsilon^{2}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{T}^{j}\left(\frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right) f g d x\right| \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\|\varepsilon f\|_{H^{1}}\|\varepsilon g\|_{H^{1}}, \\
& \varepsilon\left\|\left[\mathcal{T}^{j} ; \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right] f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}} \sum_{k=0}^{j-1}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{k} f\right\|_{H^{1}} . \tag{8.4}
\end{align*}
$$

Proof. In view of (3.15), $a^{\varepsilon, m}=a^{\text {int, }, m}+\left[a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}$, we write

$$
\varepsilon^{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} f g d x=\varepsilon^{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \frac{\Delta a^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}+\left[\Delta_{\mathrm{h}} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} f g d x+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \frac{\left[\partial_{Z}^{2} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} f g d x .
$$

Note that $\left.f\right|_{z=0}=0$, Hardy's inequality ensures that $\left\|z^{-1} f\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)} \leq C\left\|\partial_{z} f\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)}$, so that we infer

$$
\begin{aligned}
\varepsilon^{2}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \frac{\Delta a^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}+\left[\Delta_{\mathrm{h}} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} f g d x\right| & \lesssim\left\|\frac{\Delta a^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}+\left[\Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{~b}^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\|\varepsilon f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\|\varepsilon g\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \\
& \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\|\varepsilon f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\|\varepsilon g\|_{L_{+}^{2}},
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \frac{\left[\partial_{Z}^{2} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} f g d x\right| & =\left|\int_{\Omega} \frac{\left[Z^{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon z^{-1} f\right)\left(\varepsilon z^{-1} g\right) d x\right| \\
& \lesssim\left\|\frac{Z^{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\left\|\varepsilon z^{-1} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\varepsilon z^{-1} g\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \\
& \lesssim\left\|\frac{Z^{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\left\|\varepsilon \partial_{z} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\varepsilon \partial_{z} g\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\|\varepsilon \partial_{z} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\varepsilon \partial_{z} g\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}},
\end{aligned}
$$

where we used the fact that $\left\|\frac{Z^{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}$ due to $\partial_{Z}^{2} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m} \in \mathcal{W}_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}-2 m-\frac{11}{2}}$. This leads to the first inequality of (8.3).

Along the same line, we observe that

$$
\begin{align*}
\varepsilon^{2}\left\|\frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} & \leq \varepsilon^{2}\left\|\frac{\Delta a^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}+\left[\Delta_{\mathrm{h}} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\|f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\frac{\left[\partial_{Z}^{2} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \\
& \lesssim \varepsilon \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\|\varepsilon f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\frac{\left[\partial_{Z}^{2} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} . \tag{8.5}
\end{align*}
$$

Whereas it follows from inequality, $\left\|z^{-1} f\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)} \leq C\left\|\partial_{z} f\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)}$, that we

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\frac{\left[\partial_{Z}^{2} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} & =\left\|\frac{\left[Z \partial_{Z}^{2} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon z^{-1} f\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \\
& \lesssim\left\|\frac{Z \partial_{Z}^{2} a^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\left\|\varepsilon z^{-1} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\|\varepsilon \partial_{z} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

which together with (8.5) ensures the second inequality of (8.3).

The inequalities of (8.4) can be proved along the same line, we omit the details here. This completes the proof of Lemma 8.1.

Lemma 8.2. Let $f$ and $g$ be smooth enough functions which satisfy the homogenous boundary condition $\left.f\right|_{z=0}=\left.g\right|_{z=0}=0$. Then one has

$$
\begin{align*}
& \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}(f) g d x=-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}(g) f d x, \quad \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}(f) f d x=0 \\
& \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}(g) \partial_{t} f-\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}(f) \partial_{t} g\right) d x=\frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}(g) f d x-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{S}_{\partial_{t} u^{\varepsilon, m}}(g) f d x \tag{8.6}
\end{align*}
$$

Moreover, for $j \in\left[0, s_{0}-2 m-6\right]$, there holds

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{T}^{j} u^{\varepsilon, m}}(f)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\|f\|_{H^{1}} \quad \text { and } \quad\left\|\left[\mathcal{T}^{j} ; \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\right](f)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}} \sum_{k=0}^{j-1}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{k} f\right\|_{H^{1}} \tag{8.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. The first two equalities in (8.6) can be obtained by using integration by parts. Whereas observing that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}(g) \partial_{t} f\right. & \left.-\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}(f) \partial_{t} g\right) d x \\
& =\frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}(g) f d x-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \operatorname{div}\left(u^{\varepsilon, m} f \partial_{t} g\right)-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{S}_{\partial_{t} u^{\varepsilon, m}}(g) f d x .
\end{aligned}
$$

Then the second equation in (8.6) follows from the homogeneous boundary condition of $f$.
Next we just prove the first inequality of (8.7) for the case $j=0$. We observe that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|f \nabla \cdot u^{\varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}= & \left\|f\left(\operatorname{div} u^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}+\left[\operatorname{div}_{\mathrm{h}} u^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}+\varepsilon^{-1}\left[\partial_{Z} u^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \\
& \lesssim\|f\|_{L_{+}^{6}}\left\|\operatorname{div} u^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{3}}+\|f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\operatorname{div}_{\mathrm{h}} u^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}} \\
& +\left\|z^{-1} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|Z \partial_{Z} u^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}} \\
& \lesssim\|f\|_{H^{1}}\left(\left\|u^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}\right\|_{H^{2}}+\left\|u^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(H_{\mathrm{h}}^{\frac{5}{2}}\right)}\right)+\left\|\partial_{z} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|Z \partial_{Z} u^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(H_{\mathrm{h}}^{\frac{3}{2}}\right)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

As a result, we achieve

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}(f)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} & \lesssim\left\|u^{\varepsilon, m} \cdot \nabla f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|f \nabla \cdot u^{\varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \\
& \lesssim\|f\|_{H^{1}}\left(\left\|u^{\varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}+\left\|u^{\mathrm{int}, \varepsilon, m}\right\|_{H^{2}}+\left\|u^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(H_{\mathrm{h}}^{\frac{5}{2}}\right)}+\left\|Z \partial_{Z} u^{\mathrm{b}, \varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(H_{\mathrm{h}}^{\frac{3}{2}}\right)}\right) \\
& \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\|f\|_{H^{1}},
\end{aligned}
$$

which leads to the first inequality of (8.7) for $j=0$.
The second inequality of (8.7) follows from the first one. This ends the proof of Lemma 8.2.

Lemma 8.3. Let $\left(\mathfrak{A}_{1}, \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right)$ be smooth enough solution to the following system:

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\varepsilon\left(\partial_{t}+\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}(\cdot)\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \Delta \mathfrak{A}_{2}=\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{2}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{2}+f_{1}-f_{2},  \tag{8.8}\\
\varepsilon\left(\partial_{t}+\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}(\cdot)\right) \mathfrak{A}_{2}-\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \Delta \mathfrak{A}_{1}+2\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2} \mathfrak{A}_{1}=-\chi_{1} \mathfrak{A}_{1}+\varepsilon^{m+1} \chi_{2}-g_{1}-g_{2}, \\
\left.\mathfrak{A}_{1}\right|_{z=0}=0,\left.\quad \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right|_{z=0}=0 .
\end{array}\right.
$$

Then if $s_{0}-2 m-10 \geq 0$, one has

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{d}{d t}\left\{\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{4}\left\|\left(\nabla \mathfrak{A}_{1}, \nabla \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\frac{1}{2} \chi_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}^{2}+\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}\right) d x\right. \\
& \left.+\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{2}^{2}-2 \varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{2} \mathfrak{A}_{2}-2 \varepsilon^{m+1} \chi_{2} \mathfrak{A}_{1}\right) d x\right\} \\
& +\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(g_{2} \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{1}-f_{2} \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right) d x \lesssim\left(1+\left\|\hbar_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}+\left\|\partial_{t} \hbar_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right)\left\|\varepsilon\left(\mathfrak{A}_{1}, \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right)\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2}  \tag{8.9}\\
& +\left(1+\left\|\chi_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}+\left\|\partial_{t} \chi_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right)\left\|\mathfrak{A}_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\left(\varepsilon^{-1} f_{1}, \varepsilon^{-1} g_{1}, g_{2}, f_{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \\
& +\left\|\nabla\left(f_{1}, g_{1}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\varepsilon^{2(m+1)}\left(\left\|\left(\chi_{2}, \varepsilon \hbar_{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\left(\partial_{t} \chi_{2}, \partial_{t} \hbar_{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right) .
\end{align*}
$$

Proof. We first get, by taking the $L^{2}$ inner product of the $\mathfrak{A}_{1}$ equation of (8.8) with $-\partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{2}$, that

$$
\begin{align*}
& -\varepsilon \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{1}+\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\mathfrak{A}_{1}\right)\right) \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{2} d x+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{4} \frac{d}{d t}\left\|\nabla \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \\
& =-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{2} \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{2} d x-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(f_{1}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{2}-f_{2}\right) \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{2} d x . \tag{8.10}
\end{align*}
$$

While by substituting the $\mathfrak{A}_{2}$ equation of (8.8) into $-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} f_{1} \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{2} d x$, one has

$$
\begin{aligned}
& -\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} f_{1} \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{2} d x=\frac{\varepsilon}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \nabla f_{1} \cdot \nabla \mathfrak{A}_{1} d x \\
& \quad+\varepsilon^{-1} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} f_{1}\left(\varepsilon \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\mathfrak{A}_{2}\right)+\left(2\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\chi_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}-\varepsilon^{m+1} \chi_{2}+g_{1}+g_{2}\right) d x
\end{aligned}
$$

By inserting the above equality into (8.10) and using integrating by parts, we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{d}{d t}\left\{\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{4}\left\|\nabla \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{2}^{2}-2 \varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{2} \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right) d x\right\} \\
& -\varepsilon \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{1}+\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\mathfrak{A}_{1}\right)\right) \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{2} d x-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} f_{2} \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{2} d x=-\varepsilon^{m+2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \partial_{t} \hbar_{2} \mathfrak{A}_{2} d x  \tag{8.11}\\
& +\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \partial_{t}\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{2}^{2} d x+\frac{\varepsilon}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \nabla f_{1} \cdot \nabla \mathfrak{A}_{1} d x \\
& +\varepsilon^{-1} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} f_{1}\left(\varepsilon \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\mathfrak{A}_{2}\right)+\left(2\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\chi_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}-\varepsilon^{m+1} \chi_{2}+g_{1}+g_{2}\right) d x .
\end{align*}
$$

On the other hand, we get, by taking the $L^{2}$ inner product of the $\mathfrak{A}_{2}$ equation of (8.8) with $\partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{1}$, that

$$
\begin{align*}
& \varepsilon \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{2}+\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\mathfrak{A}_{2}\right)\right) \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{1} d x+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{4} \frac{d}{d t}\left\|\nabla \mathfrak{A}_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\frac{1}{2} \chi_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}^{2} d x  \tag{8.12}\\
& =\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\varepsilon^{m+1} \chi_{2}-g_{1}-g_{2}\right) \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{1} d x+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(2 a^{\varepsilon, m} \partial_{t} a^{\varepsilon, m}+\partial_{t} \chi_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}^{2} d x
\end{align*}
$$

By using the $\mathfrak{A}_{1}$ equation of (8.8), we write

$$
\begin{aligned}
& -\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} g_{1} \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{1} d x=-\frac{\varepsilon}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \nabla g_{1} \cdot \nabla \mathfrak{A}_{2} d x-\varepsilon^{-1} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} g_{1}\left(f_{1}-f_{2}\right) d x \\
& \quad+\varepsilon^{m+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} g_{1} \hbar_{2} d x+\varepsilon^{-1} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} g_{1}\left(\varepsilon \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\mathfrak{A}_{1}\right)-\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right) d x .
\end{aligned}
$$

By inserting the above equality into (8.12) and using integrating by parts, we find

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{4} \frac{d}{d t}\left\|\nabla \mathfrak{A}_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\frac{1}{2} \chi_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}^{2}-\varepsilon^{m+1} \chi_{2} \mathfrak{A}_{1}\right) d x \\
& \quad+\varepsilon \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{2}+\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\mathfrak{A}_{2}\right)\right) \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{1} d x+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} g_{2} \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{1} d x=-\varepsilon^{m+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \partial_{t} \chi_{2} \mathfrak{A}_{1} d x \\
& \quad+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(2 a^{\varepsilon, m} \partial_{t} a^{\varepsilon, m}+\partial_{t} \chi_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}^{2} d x-\frac{\varepsilon}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \nabla g_{1} \cdot \nabla \mathfrak{A}_{2} d x+\varepsilon^{m-1} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} g_{1} \hbar_{2} d x  \tag{8.13}\\
& \left.\quad+\varepsilon^{-1} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} g_{1}\left(f_{2}-f_{1}+\varepsilon \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\mathfrak{A}_{1}\right)-\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{1}\right)\right) \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right) d x .
\end{align*}
$$

Thanks to (8.6), we get, by summing up (8.11) and (8.13), that

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d}{d t} & \left\{\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{4}\left\|\left(\nabla \mathfrak{A}_{1}, \nabla \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{2}^{2}-2 \varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{2} \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right) d x\right. \\
& \left.\left.+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\frac{1}{2} \chi_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}^{2}-\varepsilon^{m+1} \chi_{2} \mathfrak{A}_{1}+\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}\right) d x\right\}  \tag{8.14}\\
& +\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(g_{2} \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{1}-f_{2} \partial_{t} \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right) d x=\mathfrak{R},
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathfrak{R} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\mathcal{S}_{\partial_{t} u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}+\left(2 a^{\varepsilon, m} \partial_{t} a^{\varepsilon, m}+\partial_{t} \chi_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}^{2}\right) d x \\
&+\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \partial_{t}\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{2}^{2} d x-\varepsilon^{m+1} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\partial_{t} \chi_{2} \mathfrak{A}_{1}+\varepsilon \partial_{t} \hbar_{2} \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right) d x \\
&+\frac{\varepsilon}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\nabla f_{1} \cdot \nabla \mathfrak{A}_{1}-\nabla g_{1} \cdot \nabla \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right) d x+\varepsilon^{-1} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(f_{1} \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right)+g_{1} \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{1}\right)\right) d x \\
&+\varepsilon^{-1} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(f_{1}\left(2\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\chi_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}-g_{1}\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \hbar_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right. \\
&\left.+f_{1} g_{2}+g_{1} f_{2}-\varepsilon^{m+1}\left(f_{1} \chi_{2}-\varepsilon g_{1} \hbar_{2}\right)\right) d x .
\end{aligned}
$$

Notice that $s_{0}-2 m \geq 10$, we get, by applying Lemmas 8.1 and 8.2 , that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{S}_{\partial_{t} u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1} d x\right| \lesssim\left\|\mathcal{S}_{\partial_{t} u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\mathfrak{A}_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\|\varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right\|_{H^{1}}\left\|\mathfrak{A}_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}, \\
& \frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{4}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \partial_{t}\left(\frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}^{2} d x\right| \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\|\varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{1}\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2},
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \varepsilon^{-1}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(f_{1} \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right)+g_{1} \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{1}\right)\right) d x\right| \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}} \varepsilon^{-1}\left\|\left(f_{1}, g_{1}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\varepsilon\left(\mathfrak{A}_{1}, \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right)\right\|_{H^{1}}, \\
& \varepsilon^{-1}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} g_{1} \frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} \mathfrak{A}_{2} d x\right| \lesssim \varepsilon^{-1}\left\|g_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}} \varepsilon^{-1}\left\|g_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right\|_{H^{1}},
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(2 a^{\varepsilon, m} \partial_{t} a^{\varepsilon, m}+\partial_{t} \chi_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1}^{2} d x\right| \lesssim\left(\mathcal{E}_{0}+\left\|\partial_{t} \chi_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right)\left\|\mathfrak{A}_{1}^{2}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}, \\
& \frac{\varepsilon^{m+2}}{2}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \partial_{t} \hbar_{1} \mathfrak{A}_{2}^{2} d x\right| \lesssim \varepsilon^{m}\left\|\partial_{t} \hbar_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\left\|\varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}, \\
& \varepsilon^{m+1}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\partial_{t} \chi_{2} \mathfrak{A}_{1}+\varepsilon \partial_{t} \hbar_{2} \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right) d x\right| \lesssim \varepsilon^{m+1}\left\|\left(\partial_{t} \chi_{2}, \partial_{t} \hbar_{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\left(\mathfrak{A}_{1}, \varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}},
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \varepsilon^{-1}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} f_{1}\left(2\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\chi_{1}\right) \mathfrak{A}_{1} d x\right| \lesssim \varepsilon^{-1}\left(\mathcal{E}_{0}+\left\|\chi_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right)\left\|f_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\mathfrak{A}_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}, \\
& \varepsilon^{m+1}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} g_{1} \hbar_{1} \mathfrak{A}_{2} d x\right| \lesssim \varepsilon^{m}\left\|\hbar_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\left\|g_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\varepsilon \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}, \\
& \varepsilon^{m}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(-f_{1} \chi_{2}+\varepsilon g_{1} \hbar_{2}\right) d x\right| \lesssim \varepsilon^{m}\left(\left\|f_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\chi_{2}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\varepsilon\left\|g_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\hbar_{2}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{\varepsilon}{2}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\nabla f_{1} \cdot \nabla \mathfrak{A}_{1}-\nabla g_{1} \cdot \nabla \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right) d x\right| \lesssim\left\|\left(\nabla f_{1}, \nabla g_{1}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\varepsilon\left(\nabla \mathfrak{A}_{1}, \nabla \mathfrak{A}_{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}, \\
& \varepsilon^{-1}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(f_{1} g_{2}+g_{1} f_{2}\right) d x\right| \lesssim \varepsilon^{-1}\left(\left\|f_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|g_{2}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|g_{1}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|f_{2}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

By substituting the above inequalities into (8.14), we obtain (8.9). This completes the proof of Lemma 8.3.

## 9. Validity of the WKB expansion

The goal of this section is to present the proof of Theorem 3.2.
Proposition 9.1. Let $\Psi^{a, m}$ be given by (3.15). Then one has

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.a^{\varepsilon, m}\right|_{z=0}=1,\left.\quad \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}\right|_{z=0}=0 \tag{9.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{GP}\left(\Psi^{a, m}\right) \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} i \varepsilon \partial_{t} \Psi^{a, m}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \Delta \Psi^{a, m}-\Psi^{a, m}\left(\left|\Psi^{a, m}\right|^{2}-1\right)=R^{\varepsilon, m} e^{\frac{i}{\varepsilon} \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}} \tag{9.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $R^{\varepsilon, m}$ is of the form:

$$
\begin{equation*}
R^{\varepsilon, m}=-\varepsilon^{m+1} a^{\varepsilon, m}\left(\varepsilon R_{a}^{\text {int,m }}+\left[R_{a}^{b, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}\right)+i \varepsilon^{m+2}\left(\varepsilon R_{\varphi}^{\text {int }, m}+\left[R_{\varphi}^{b, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}\right) . \tag{9.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover, there holds

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\left(R_{a}^{\mathrm{int}, m}, R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{int}, m}\right)\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-2(m+3)}}+\left\|\left(R_{a}^{b, m}, R_{\varphi}^{b, m}\right)\right\|_{\mathcal{W}_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}-2(m+3)+\frac{1}{2}}} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0} \tag{9.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. Let $a^{\varepsilon, m}$ and $\varphi^{\varepsilon, m}$ be given by (3.15). Then we observe from the computations presented in Section 2 that

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\partial_{t} a^{\varepsilon, m}+\nabla\left(\varphi^{\varepsilon, m}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \varphi_{m+2}\right) \cdot \nabla a^{\varepsilon, m}+\frac{1}{2} a^{\varepsilon, m} \Delta\left(\varphi^{\varepsilon, m}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \varphi_{m+2}\right) \\
=\varepsilon^{m+2}\left(R_{a}^{\text {int }, m}+\varepsilon^{-1}\left[R_{a}^{\mathrm{b}, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}\right), \\
\partial_{t}\left(\varphi^{\varepsilon, m}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \varphi_{m+2}\right)+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla\left(\varphi^{\varepsilon, m}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \varphi_{m+2}\right)\right|^{2}+\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}-1-\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} \\
\\
=\varepsilon^{m+2}\left(R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{int}, m}+\varepsilon^{-1}\left[R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{b}, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}\right),
\end{array}
$$

where $R_{a}^{\mathrm{int}, m}, R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{int}, m}, R_{a}^{\mathrm{b}, m}$ and $R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{b}, m}$ satisfy

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\left(R_{a}^{\mathrm{int}, m}, R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{int}, m}\right)\right\|_{W_{T_{0}}^{s_{0}-2(m+3)}}+\left\|\left(R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{b}, m}, R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{b}, m}\right)\right\|_{\mathcal{W}_{1, T_{0}}^{s_{0}-2(m+3)+\frac{1}{2}}} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0} \tag{9.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

The above equations can also be written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \partial_{t} a^{\varepsilon, m}+\nabla \varphi^{\varepsilon, m} \cdot \nabla a^{\varepsilon, m}+\frac{1}{2} a^{\varepsilon, m} \Delta \varphi^{\varepsilon, m} \\
& \quad=\varepsilon^{m+2}\left(\nabla \varphi_{m+2} \cdot \nabla a^{\varepsilon, m}+\frac{1}{2} a^{\varepsilon, m} \Delta \varphi_{m+2}+R_{a}^{\mathrm{int}, m}+\varepsilon^{-1}\left[R_{a}^{\mathrm{b}, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}\right), \\
& \partial_{t} \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}\right|^{2}+\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}-1-\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}} \\
& \quad=\varepsilon^{m+2}\left(\partial_{t} \varphi_{m+2}+\frac{1}{2}\left(2 \nabla \varphi^{\varepsilon, m} \cdot \nabla \varphi_{m+2}-\varepsilon^{m+2}\left|\nabla \varphi_{m+2}\right|^{2}\right)+R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{int}, m}+\varepsilon^{-1}\left[R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{b}, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

from which, (9.5) and (8.2), we infer

$$
\begin{align*}
& \partial_{t} a^{\varepsilon, m}+\nabla \varphi^{\varepsilon, m} \cdot \nabla a^{\varepsilon, m}+\frac{1}{2} a^{\varepsilon, m} \Delta \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}=\varepsilon^{m+2}\left(R_{a}^{\mathrm{int}, m}+\varepsilon^{-1}\left[R_{a}^{\mathrm{b}, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}\right), \\
& \partial_{t} \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}\right|^{2}+\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}-1-\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}=\varepsilon^{m+2}\left(R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{int}, m}+\varepsilon^{-1}\left[R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{b}, m}\right]_{\varepsilon}\right), \tag{9.6}
\end{align*}
$$

where $R_{a}^{\mathrm{int}, m}, R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{int}, m}, R_{a}^{\mathrm{b}, m}$ and $R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{b}, m}$ satisfy (9.3).
On the other hand, it is easy to observe that

$$
G P\left(\Psi^{a, m}\right)=R^{\varepsilon, m} e^{\frac{i}{\varepsilon} \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}} \quad \text { with } \quad R^{\varepsilon, m}=\left(-a^{\varepsilon, m} R_{\varphi}^{m}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)+i \varepsilon R_{a}^{m}
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
& R_{\varphi}^{m}=\partial_{t} \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}+\frac{1}{2}\left|\nabla \varphi^{\varepsilon, m}\right|^{2}+\left(\left|a^{\varepsilon, m}\right|^{2}-1\right),  \tag{9.7}\\
& R_{a}^{m}=\partial_{t} a^{\varepsilon, m}+\nabla \varphi^{\varepsilon, m} \cdot \nabla a^{\varepsilon, m}+\frac{1}{2} a^{\varepsilon, m} \Delta \varphi^{\varepsilon, m},
\end{align*}
$$

which along with (9.6) implies (9.3). This ends the proof of Proposition 9.1.
Let us now turn to the proof of Proposition 3.6.
Proof of Proposition 3.6. Once again we shall only present the a priori estimates. Let $w$ and $\phi$ be real-valued functions, we are going to seek the true solution of (1.1) with the form (3.17). In view of (1.2), $(w, \phi)$ satisfies the following initial condition $\left.w\right|_{t=0}=\varepsilon^{m+2}\left(a_{m+2,0}^{\mathrm{in}}+R_{a, 0}^{\varepsilon}\right),\left.\quad \phi\right|_{t=0}=\varepsilon^{m+2} R_{\varphi, 0}^{\varepsilon} \quad$ with $\quad \lim _{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0}\left\|\left(R_{a, 0}^{\varepsilon}, \nabla R_{\varphi, 0}^{\varepsilon}\right)\right\|_{H^{s_{0}-2 m-5}}=0$.

We shall divide the proof of Proposition 3.6 into the following steps:
Step 1. The derivation of the error equation

Substituting (3.18) into (1.1) yields

$$
\begin{align*}
i \varepsilon\left(\partial_{t} \mathfrak{w}+\left(u^{\varepsilon, m} \cdot \nabla\right) \mathfrak{w}+\frac{1}{2} \mathfrak{w} \nabla \cdot u^{\varepsilon, m}\right)+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \Delta \mathfrak{w}- & 2 w_{\mathrm{R}}\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}  \tag{9.8}\\
& =R_{\varphi}^{m} \mathfrak{w}-R^{\varepsilon, m}+Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w}),
\end{align*}
$$

where $R_{\varphi}^{m}$ and $R^{\varepsilon, m}$ are defined in (9.7) and (9.3), and

$$
\begin{align*}
Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w}) & \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}+\mathfrak{w}\right)\left(\left|a^{\varepsilon, m}+\mathfrak{w}\right|^{2}-\left|a^{\varepsilon, m}\right|^{2}\right)-2 w_{\mathrm{R}}\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}  \tag{9.9}\\
& =a^{\varepsilon, m}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}^{2}+w_{\mathrm{I}}^{2}\right)+\mathfrak{w}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}^{2}+w_{\mathrm{I}}^{2}+2 a^{\varepsilon, m} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right) .
\end{align*}
$$

Notice that $w_{\mathrm{R}}=w \cos \phi+a^{\varepsilon, m}(\cos \phi-1), w_{\mathrm{I}}=\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}+w\right) \sin \phi$, we have the following initial boundary condition for ( $w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}$ ) :

$$
\begin{align*}
\left.w_{\mathrm{R}}\right|_{z=0}= & 0,\left.\quad w_{\mathrm{I}}\right|_{z=0}=0 \\
\left.w_{\mathrm{R}}\right|_{t=0}= & \varepsilon^{m+2}\left(a_{m+2,0}^{\mathrm{in}}+R_{a, 0}^{\varepsilon}\right) \cos \left(\varepsilon^{m+2} R_{\varphi, 0}^{\varepsilon}\right) \\
& +a^{\varepsilon, m}(0)\left(\cos \left(\varepsilon^{m+2} R_{\varphi, 0}^{\varepsilon}\right)-1\right) \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} w_{\mathrm{R}, 0}^{\varepsilon},  \tag{9.10}\\
\left.w_{\mathrm{I}}\right|_{t=0}= & \left(a^{\varepsilon, m}(0)+\varepsilon^{m+2}\left(a_{m+2,0}^{\mathrm{in}}+R_{a, 0}^{\varepsilon}\right)\right) \sin \left(\varepsilon^{m+2} R_{\varphi, 0}^{\varepsilon}\right) \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} w_{\mathrm{I}, 0}^{\varepsilon} .
\end{align*}
$$

Then by taking separating the imaginary and real parts of (9.8), we derive the system (3.19) for ( $w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}$ ) with

$$
\begin{equation*}
r_{a}^{m} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \varepsilon R_{a}^{\text {int }, m}+\left[R_{a}^{\mathrm{b}, m}\right]_{\varepsilon} \quad \text { and } \quad r_{\varphi}^{m} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \varepsilon R_{\varphi}^{\text {int }, m}+\left[R_{\varphi}^{\mathrm{b}, m}\right]_{\varepsilon} \tag{9.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Step 2. The estimate of $\left\|\varepsilon\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{L_{T}^{\infty}\left(H^{1}\right)}$
In view of (8.6) and (3.19), we get, by using $L_{+}^{2}$ energy estimate, that

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left|\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}}\right|^{2}\right. & \left.+\left|\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{R}}\right|^{2}\right) \left.d x=\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(2\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right) w_{\mathrm{R}} \right\rvert\, \varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}} d x \\
& +\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\varepsilon^{m+1} a^{\varepsilon, m} r_{a}^{m}-\operatorname{Re} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right) \mid \varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}} d x  \tag{9.12}\\
& \left.+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right) w_{\mathrm{I}}+\operatorname{Im} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})-\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right) \right\rvert\, \varepsilon w_{\mathrm{R}} d x
\end{align*}
$$

If $s_{0}-2 m \geq 9$, we deduce from (8.2) and (9.4) that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left.\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(2\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right) w_{\mathrm{R}}\right| \varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}} d x \right\rvert\, \\
& \lesssim\left(\left\|a^{\varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2}+\varepsilon^{m+2}\left\|r_{\varphi}^{m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}+\left\|\frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right)\left\|w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \\
& \lesssim\left\|w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2},
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\varepsilon^{m+1} a^{\varepsilon, m} r_{a}^{m}-\operatorname{Re} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right)\right| \varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}} d x \mid \\
& \lesssim\left(\varepsilon^{m+1}\left\|a^{\varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\left\|r_{\varphi}^{m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\operatorname{Re} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right)\left\|\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \\
& \quad \lesssim\left(\varepsilon^{m+1} \mathcal{E}_{0}+\left\|\operatorname{Re} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right)\left\|\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}, \\
& 35
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left.\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right) w_{\mathrm{I}}+\operatorname{Im} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})-\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right)\right| \varepsilon w_{\mathrm{R}} d x \right\rvert\, \\
& \lesssim\left(\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2}\left\|\frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}+\varepsilon^{m+2}\left\|r_{\varphi}^{m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right)\left\|\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\varepsilon \operatorname{Im} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\varepsilon^{m+3}\left\|r_{\varphi}^{m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right)\left\|w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \\
& \lesssim\left(\mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\|\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\varepsilon \operatorname{Im} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\right)\left\|w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

By inserting the above inequalities into (9.12), we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t}\left\|\varepsilon\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \lesssim \|\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, \varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}}\left\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\right\| \operatorname{Re} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\left\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\right\| \varepsilon \operatorname{Im} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w}) \|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\varepsilon^{2 m+2} \mathcal{E}_{0}\right. \tag{9.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

On the other hand, by applying Lemma 8.3 with $\hbar_{1}=\hbar_{2}=r_{\varphi}^{m}, f_{1}=\operatorname{Im} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w}), f_{2}=0$, $\chi_{1}=\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}, \chi_{2}=a^{\varepsilon, m} r_{a}^{m}, g_{1}=\operatorname{Re} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})$ and $g_{2}=0$, we achieve

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} \widetilde{\mathfrak{E}}_{1} \lesssim \mathfrak{E}_{1}+\varepsilon^{-2}\left(\left\|Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\varepsilon \nabla Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right) \tag{9.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathfrak{E}_{1} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \varepsilon^{2 m+2} \mathcal{E}_{0}+\left\|\varepsilon\left(w_{\mathrm{I}}, w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2}+\left\|w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \quad \text { and } \\
& \left.\widetilde{\mathfrak{E}}_{1} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} C_{0} \varepsilon^{2 m+2} \mathcal{E}_{0}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{4}\left\|\left(\nabla w_{\mathrm{I}}, \nabla w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}}\right) \right\rvert\, w_{\mathrm{R}} d x \\
&+\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(2\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right) w_{\mathrm{R}}^{2} d x  \tag{9.15}\\
&+\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}-\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right) w_{\mathrm{I}}^{2}-2 \varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m} w_{\mathrm{I}}-2 \varepsilon^{m+1} a^{\varepsilon, m} r_{a}^{m} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right) d x .
\end{align*}
$$

Step 3. High-order tangential derivatives estimates
The main result states as follow, the proof of which will be postponed after the proof of Proposition 3.6.

Lemma 9.1. Let $s_{0} \geq 2 m+9+N$ be an integer, we denote

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathfrak{E}_{N} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} 2 m+2 \\
& \varepsilon^{2 m} \mathcal{E}_{0}+\sum_{j=0}^{N-1}\left(\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2}\right) \quad \text { and } \\
& \widetilde{\mathfrak{E}}_{N} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} C_{N} \varepsilon^{2 m+2} \mathcal{E}_{0}+\sum_{j=0}^{N-1} \dot{E}_{j} \text { with }  \tag{9.16}\\
& \dot{E}_{j} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left\{\frac{1}{4}\left\|\varepsilon\left(\nabla \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}, \nabla \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}\left|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right|^{2} d x\right. \\
&+\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right)\left(\left|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right|^{2}+\left|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right|^{2}\right) d x \\
& \left.\quad-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\varepsilon^{m+2} \mathcal{T}^{j} r_{a}^{m}+\frac{1}{2} R_{\partial_{t}, 1, j}\right) \right\rvert\, \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}} d x \\
& \left.+\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)-\varepsilon^{m+1} \mathcal{T}^{j}\left(a^{\varepsilon, m} r_{a}^{m}\right)+\frac{1}{2} R_{\partial_{t}, 2, j}\right) \right\rvert\, \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}} d x
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
& R_{\partial_{t}, 1, j} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left[\mathcal{T}^{j} ; \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\right]\left(\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)-\left[\mathcal{T}^{j} ; \frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right] w_{\mathrm{I}}, \\
& R_{\partial_{t}, 2, j} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=}\left[\mathcal{T}^{j} ; \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\right]\left(\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)+\left[\mathcal{T}^{j} ; 2\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right] w_{\mathrm{R}} \tag{9.17}
\end{align*}
$$

Then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} \widetilde{\mathfrak{E}}_{N} \leq C \mathfrak{E}_{N}+\varepsilon^{-2} \sum_{j=0}^{N-1}\left(\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\varepsilon \nabla \mathcal{T}^{j} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right) \tag{9.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Step 4. Estimates of nonlinear terms
Lemma 9.2. Let $N \geq 4$ and $s_{0} \geq 2 m+6+N$ be integers. Then one has

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varepsilon^{-2} \sum_{j=0}^{N-1}\left(\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\varepsilon \nabla \mathcal{T}^{j} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right) \lesssim \varepsilon^{-8} \mathfrak{E}_{N}\left(1+\varepsilon^{-2} \mathfrak{E}_{N}\right) \mathfrak{E}_{N} \tag{9.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

The proof of this lemma will be postponed below.
Next, we claim that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widetilde{\mathfrak{E}}_{N} \sim \mathfrak{E}_{N}, \quad \text { i.e. } \quad C_{1}^{-1} \mathfrak{E}_{N} \leq \widetilde{\mathfrak{E}}_{N} \leq C_{1} \mathfrak{E}_{N} \tag{9.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

for some positive constant $C_{1}$.
We first get, by a similar the proof of (9.27) and (9.29), that

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(R_{\partial_{t}, 2, j}\left|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}-R_{\partial_{t}, 1, j}\right| \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right) d x\right| \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} \varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \sum_{k=0}^{j-1}\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{k}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{H^{1}} \\
&+\mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \sum_{k=0}^{j}\left(\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{k} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{H^{1}}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{k} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Whereas it follows from Lemmas 8.1 and 8.2 that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right)\left(\left|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right|^{2}+\left|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right|^{2}\right) d x\right| \\
& \lesssim\left(\mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}+\varepsilon^{m}\left\|r_{\varphi}^{m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}\right)\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right| \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}} d x \left\lvert\, \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{H^{1}}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right.
$$

and

$$
\varepsilon^{m+1}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} r_{a}^{m}\left|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}-\mathcal{T}^{j}\left(a^{\varepsilon, m} r_{a}^{m}\right)\right| \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right) d x\right| \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}} \varepsilon^{m+1}\left(\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L^{2}}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right)
$$

Finally, by virtue of (8.2), we have $\left\|a^{\varepsilon, m}-1\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}$, from which and (9.16), we deduce that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\dot{E}_{j} \geq & \frac{1}{4}\left(\left\|\varepsilon\left(\nabla \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}, \nabla \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right) \\
& -C \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\left\|\varepsilon\left(\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}, \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right)-C \mathcal{E}_{0} \varepsilon^{2 m+2}
\end{aligned}
$$

This ensures (9.20) as long as $c$ in (3.3) and $\varepsilon$ are small enough and $C_{N}$ in (9.16) satisfies $C_{N} \geq C+1$.

Now we are in a position to complete the proof of Proposition 3.6. Indeed by inserting (9.19) into (9.18), we find

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} \widetilde{\mathfrak{E}}_{N} \leq C\left(\mathfrak{E}_{N}+\varepsilon^{-8} \mathfrak{E}_{N}\left(1+\varepsilon^{-2} \mathfrak{E}_{N}\right) \mathfrak{E}_{N}\right) \tag{9.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $T_{0}$ be determined by Proposition 3.1 and $N \geq 4$, we define

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{2}^{\star} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \sup \left\{T^{\prime} \in(0, T], \quad \mathfrak{E}_{N}(t) \leq \mathfrak{C} \mathcal{E}_{0} \varepsilon^{2 m+2} \quad \forall \quad t \in\left[0, T^{\prime}\right]\right\} \tag{9.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

for some positive constant $\mathfrak{C}$ to be determined later on. We are going to prove that $T_{2}^{\star}=T_{0}$ provided that $c$ in (3.3) and $\varepsilon$ are sufficiently small.

$$
\text { Indeed for } m \geq 4 \text { and } \varepsilon \leq\left(\frac{1}{4 \mathcal{E} \mathcal{E}_{0}}\right)^{\frac{1}{2(m-3)}} \text {, one has }
$$

$$
\varepsilon^{-8} \mathfrak{E}_{N}(t) \leq \mathfrak{C} \mathcal{E}_{0} \varepsilon^{2 m-6} \leq \frac{1}{4} \quad \forall t \in\left[0, T_{2}^{\star}\right]
$$

from which, (9.20) and (9.21), we infer

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} \widetilde{\mathfrak{E}}_{N} \leq 2 C \mathfrak{E}_{N} \leq 2 C C_{1} \widetilde{\mathfrak{E}}_{N} . \tag{9.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thanks to (9.10), we get, by applying Gronwall's inequality to (9.23), that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widetilde{\mathfrak{E}}_{N}(t) \leq C e^{2 C C_{1} T_{0}} \mathcal{E}_{0} \varepsilon^{2 m+2} \quad \forall t \leq T_{2}^{\star} . \tag{9.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then by taking $\mathfrak{C}=2 C C_{1} e^{2 C C_{1} T_{0}}$ in (9.22), we deduce from (9.20) that

$$
\mathfrak{E}_{N}(t) \leq C_{1} \widetilde{\mathfrak{E}}_{N}(t) \leq \frac{1}{2} \mathfrak{C} \mathcal{E}_{0} \varepsilon^{2 m+2} \quad \forall t \leq T_{2}^{\star}
$$

This contradicts with (9.22), and this in turn shows that $T_{2}^{\star}=T_{0}$, moreover, there holds (3.20). This completes the proof of Proposition 3.6.

Proposition 3.6 has been proved provided that we present the proof of Lemmas 9.1 and 9.2.
Proof of Lemma 9.1. By applying $\mathcal{T}^{j}$ with $j \in\{1,2, \ldots, N-1\}$ to (3.19), we find

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\varepsilon\left(\partial_{t}+\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}(\cdot)\right)\left(\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \Delta\left(\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)  \tag{9.25}\\
\quad=\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right) \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}-\varepsilon^{m+2} \mathcal{T}^{j} r_{\varphi}^{m}+\mathcal{T}^{j} \operatorname{Im} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})-R_{\partial_{t}, 1, j}, \\
\varepsilon\left(\partial_{t}+\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}(\cdot)\right)\left(\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)-\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \Delta\left(\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)+\left(2\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right) \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}} \\
\quad=\varepsilon^{m+1} \mathcal{T}^{j}\left(a^{\varepsilon, m} r_{a}^{m}\right)-\mathcal{T}^{j} \operatorname{Re}^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})-R_{\partial_{t}, 2, j}, \\
\left.\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right|_{z=0}=0,\left.\quad \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right|_{z=0}=0,
\end{array}\right.
$$

with $R_{\partial_{t}, 1, j}$ and $R_{\partial_{t}, 2, j}$ being given by (9.17).
Notice that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(R_{\partial_{t}, 2, j}\left|\mathcal{T}^{j} \partial_{t} w_{\mathrm{R}}-R_{\partial_{t}, 1, j}\right| \mathcal{T}^{j} \partial_{t} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right) d x= & \frac{d}{d t} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(R_{\partial_{t}, 2, j}\left|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}-R_{\partial_{t}, 1, j}\right| \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right) d x \\
& -\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\partial_{t} R_{\partial_{t}, 2, j}\left|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}-\partial_{t} R_{\partial_{t}, 1, j}\right| \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right) d x .
\end{aligned}
$$

Then for $\dot{E}_{j}$ given by (9.16), we get, by applying Lemma 8.3, that

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{d}{d t} \dot{E}_{j}(t)-\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(\partial_{t} R_{\partial_{t}, 2, j} \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}-\partial_{t} R_{\partial_{t}, 1, j} \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right) d x \\
& \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0} \varepsilon^{2 m+2}+\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}  \tag{9.26}\\
& \quad+\left\|\left(R_{\partial_{t}, 1, j}, R_{\partial_{t}, 2, j}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\varepsilon^{-2}\left(\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\varepsilon \nabla \mathcal{T}^{j} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right) .
\end{align*}
$$

Observing that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\partial_{t}\left[\mathcal{T}^{j} ; \mathcal{S}_{u}\right] f & =\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{j} \mathcal{S}_{u}(f)-\mathcal{S}_{u}\left(\mathcal{T}^{j} \partial_{t} f\right)-\mathcal{S}_{\partial_{t} u}\left(\mathcal{T}^{j} f\right) \\
& =\left[\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{j} ; \mathcal{S}_{u}\right] f-\mathcal{S}_{\partial_{t} u}\left(\mathcal{T}^{j} f\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\partial_{t}\left[\mathcal{T}^{j} ; g\right] f=\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{j}(g f)-g \mathcal{T}^{j} \partial_{t} f-\partial_{t} g \mathcal{T}^{j} f=\left[\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{j} ; g\right] f-\partial_{t} g \mathcal{T}^{j} f
$$

In view of (9.17), we write

$$
\begin{aligned}
\partial_{t} R_{\partial_{t}, 2, j}= & {\left[\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{j} ; \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\right]\left(\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)+\left[\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{j} ; 2\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right] w_{\mathrm{R}} } \\
& -\mathcal{S}_{\partial_{t} u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)-\partial_{t}\left(2\left(a^{\varepsilon, m}\right)^{2}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right) \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}
\end{aligned}
$$

It follows from Lemmas 8.1 and 8.2 that for $s_{0}-2 m-9 \geq j+1$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \partial_{t} R_{\partial_{t}, 2, j}\right| \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}} d x \left\lvert\, \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}} \sum_{k=0}^{j}\left(\left\|\mathcal{T}^{k} \varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{H^{1}}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{k} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right)\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right. \tag{9.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

Along the same line, we write

$$
\begin{align*}
\partial_{t} R_{\partial_{t}, 1, j} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} & {\left[\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{j} ; \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\right]\left(\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)-\mathcal{S}_{\partial_{t} u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right) } \\
& -\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2}\left[\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{j} ; \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right] w_{\mathrm{I}}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \partial_{t}\left(\frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right) \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}+\varepsilon^{m-1} \partial_{t}\left[\mathcal{T}^{j} ; r_{\varphi}^{m}\right] w_{\mathrm{I}} . \tag{9.28}
\end{align*}
$$

Notice that

$$
\left[\mathcal{T}^{j+1} ; \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\right]\left(\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)=\varepsilon \sum_{k=1}^{j+1} C_{j}^{k} \mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{T}^{k} u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\mathcal{T}^{j+1-k} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)
$$

In view of (8.6), we write

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left[\mathcal{T}^{j+1} ; \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\right]\left(\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{R}}\right) \mid \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}} d x & =\varepsilon \sum_{k=1}^{j+1} C_{j}^{k} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{T}^{k} u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\mathcal{T}^{j+1-k} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right) \mid \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}} d x \\
& =-\sum_{k=1}^{j+1} C_{j}^{k} \int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{T}^{k} u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right) \mid \mathcal{T}^{j+1-k} w_{\mathrm{R}} d x
\end{aligned}
$$

from which and (8.7), we infer

$$
\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left[\mathcal{T}^{j+1} ; \mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\right]\left(\varepsilon w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)\right| \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}} d x \left\lvert\, \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{H^{1}} \sum_{k=0}^{j}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{k} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right.
$$

The same estimate holds for $\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \mathcal{S}_{\partial_{t} u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right) \mid \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}} d x$.
While applying Lemma 8.1 yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}}\left(-\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2}\left[\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{j} ; \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right] w_{\mathrm{I}}+\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \partial_{t}\left(\frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}\right) \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right| & \left|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}} d x\right| \\
& \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{H^{1}} \sum_{k=0}^{j}\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{k} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{H^{1}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

And it follows from (9.4) and (9.11) that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \varepsilon^{m+2}\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \partial_{t}\left[\mathcal{T}^{j} ; r_{\varphi}^{m}\right] w_{\mathrm{I}}\right| \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}} d x \mid \\
& \lesssim \varepsilon^{m} \sum_{k=1}^{j}\left(\left\|\mathcal{T}^{k} \partial_{t} r_{\varphi}^{m} \varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j-k} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{k} r_{\varphi}^{m} \varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j-k} \partial_{t} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right)\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \\
& \lesssim \varepsilon^{m} \sum_{k=1}^{j} \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j-k} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j-k} \partial_{t} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right)\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

As a result, thanks to (9.28), we conclude

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\int_{\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}} \partial_{t} R_{\partial_{t}, 1, j}\right| \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}} d x \left\lvert\, \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{H^{1}} \sum_{k=0}^{j}\left(\left\|\mathcal{T}^{k} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{k} \varepsilon w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{H^{1}}\right)\right. \tag{9.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

Finally, it follows from Lemmas 8.1 and 8.2 that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|R_{\partial_{t}, 1, j}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|R_{\partial_{t}, 2, j}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim \sum_{k=0}^{j-1}\left(\left\|\mathcal{T}^{k} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{k} \varepsilon\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{H^{1}}\right) \tag{9.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

By inserting the estimates (9.27), (9.29) and (9.30) into (9.26) gives rise to

$$
\begin{gather*}
\frac{d}{d t} \dot{E}_{j}(t) \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0} \varepsilon^{2 m+2}+\sum_{k=0}^{j}\left(\left\|\varepsilon \mathcal{T}^{k}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{H^{1}}^{2}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{k} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right)  \tag{9.31}\\
+\varepsilon^{-2}\left(\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\varepsilon \nabla \mathcal{T}^{j} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right)
\end{gather*}
$$

Summing up (9.14) and (9.31) for $j$ from 1 to $N-1$ leads to (9.18). This completes the proof of Lemma 9.1.

Proof of Lemma 9.2. Let's estimate the nonlinear terms in (9.18). Indeed in view of (9.9), we have

$$
\begin{align*}
& \operatorname{Re} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})=3 a^{\varepsilon, m} w_{\mathrm{R}}^{2}+a^{\varepsilon, m} w_{\mathrm{I}}^{2}+w_{\mathrm{R}}^{3}+w_{\mathrm{R}} w_{\mathrm{I}}^{2}, \\
& \operatorname{Im} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})=w_{\mathrm{I}} w_{\mathrm{R}}^{2}+w_{\mathrm{I}}^{3}+2 a^{\varepsilon, m} w_{\mathrm{I}} w_{\mathrm{R}} . \tag{9.32}
\end{align*}
$$

Recalling the Sobolev embedding and the classical interpolation inequality that

$$
\|f\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right)}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-1}\|f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\varepsilon \partial_{z} f\right\|_{L^{2}}, \quad\|f\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{2}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{\infty}\right)}^{2} \lesssim\|f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\left\|\left(1+\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right) f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}},
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
\|f\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2} & \left.\lesssim\|f\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right)}\right) f \|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(H_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right)} \\
& \lesssim\|f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}}\|f\|_{H^{1}}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\|\left(1+\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right) f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}}\left\|\left(1+\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right) f\right\|_{H^{1}}^{\frac{1}{2}} . \tag{9.33}
\end{align*}
$$

As a result, it comes out

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left\|w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2}+\left\|\mathcal{T} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-1} \mathfrak{E}_{4}, \quad\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j-\ell} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right)}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-1} \mathfrak{E}_{j-\ell+1},  \tag{9.34}\\
& \left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{2}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{\infty}\right)}^{2} \lesssim \mathfrak{E}_{\ell+2}, \quad\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell} \nabla w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{2}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{\infty}\right)}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-2} \mathfrak{E}_{\ell+3},
\end{align*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left\|w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2}+\left\|\mathcal{T} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-2} \mathfrak{E}_{4}, \quad\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j-\ell} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right)}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-2} \mathfrak{E}_{j-\ell+1},  \tag{9.35}\\
\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{2}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{\infty}\right)}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-2} \mathfrak{E}_{\ell+2}, \quad\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell} \nabla w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{2}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{\infty}\right)} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-2} \mathfrak{E}_{\ell+3} .
\end{gather*}
$$

It follows from (9.34) and (9.35) that for $j \leq N-1$,

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}^{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \lesssim & \sum_{k=0}^{(j-2)_{+}}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j-\ell} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right)}^{2}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{2}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{\infty}\right)}^{2} \\
& +\left(\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j-1} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right)\left(\left\|w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2}+\left\|\mathcal{T} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2}\right)  \tag{9.36}\\
& \lesssim \varepsilon^{-1}\left(\sum_{\ell=0}^{(j-2)_{+}} \mathfrak{E}_{j-\ell+1} \mathfrak{E}_{\ell+2}+\mathfrak{E}_{4} \mathfrak{E}_{j}\right) \lesssim \varepsilon^{-1} \mathfrak{E}_{N}^{2} \quad \text { if } \quad N \geq 4
\end{align*}
$$

Along the same line, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|\mathcal{T}^{j}\left(w_{\mathrm{I}}^{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j}\left(w_{\mathrm{I}} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-4} \mathfrak{E}_{N}^{2} \\
& \left\|\mathcal{T}^{j}\left(w_{\mathrm{I}}^{3}, w_{\mathrm{R}}^{3}, w_{\mathrm{I}}^{2} w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}} w_{\mathrm{R}}^{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-6} \mathfrak{E}_{N}^{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

Then by virtue of (8.2), for $s_{0}-2 m \geq j+7$, we have

$$
\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j}\left(a^{\varepsilon, m} w_{\mathrm{R}}^{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \lesssim \sum_{\ell=0}^{j}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j-\ell} a^{\varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell} w_{\mathrm{R}}^{2}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-1} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \mathfrak{E}_{\ell+1}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-1} \mathfrak{E}_{N}^{2}
$$

Similarly, we have

$$
\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j}\left(a^{\varepsilon, m} w_{\mathrm{I}} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j}\left(a^{\varepsilon, m} w_{\mathrm{I}}^{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-4} \mathfrak{E}_{N}^{2} .
$$

Therefore, we conclude that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varepsilon^{-2} \sum_{j=0}^{N-1}\left(\| \mathcal{T}^{j} \operatorname{Re}\left(Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\left\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\right\| \mathcal{T}^{j} \operatorname{Im}\left(Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w}) \|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right) \lesssim \varepsilon^{-6} \mathfrak{E}_{N}^{2}+\varepsilon^{-8} \mathfrak{E}_{N}^{3}\right.\right. \tag{9.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

On the other hand, we observe that

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} \nabla\left(a^{\varepsilon, m} w_{\mathrm{R}}^{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \lesssim & \sum_{\ell=0}^{j}\left(\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j-\ell} \nabla a^{\varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)^{2}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right. \\
& \left.+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j-\ell} a^{\varepsilon, m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}} \nabla w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right)  \tag{9.38}\\
\lesssim & \varepsilon^{-2} \sum_{\ell=0}^{j}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell} w_{\mathrm{R}}^{2}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\sum_{\ell=0}^{j}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}} \nabla w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} .
\end{align*}
$$

Yet notice that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}} \nabla w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \lesssim \sum_{k=0}^{(\ell-2)_{+}}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell-k} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right)}^{2}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{k} \nabla w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{2}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{\infty}\right)}^{2} \\
& \left.\quad+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell-1} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right)}^{2}\left\|\mathcal{T} \nabla w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{2}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{\infty}\right)}^{2}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{\infty}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right)}^{2}\left\|\nabla w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{\mathrm{v}}^{2}\left(L_{\mathrm{h}}^{\infty}\right)}^{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

which together with (9.34) and (9.35) ensures that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}} \nabla w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-3} \sum_{k=0}^{(\ell-2)+} \mathfrak{E}_{\ell-k+1} \mathfrak{E}_{k+3}+\varepsilon^{-3} \mathfrak{E}_{\ell+1} \mathfrak{E}_{4} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-3} \mathfrak{E}_{N}^{2} \tag{9.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

By inserting (9.36) and (9.39) into (9.38) gives rise to

$$
\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} \nabla\left(a^{\varepsilon, m} w_{\mathrm{R}}^{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-3} \mathfrak{E}_{N}^{2} \quad \text { for } \quad j \leq N-1
$$

Exactly along the same line, we achieve

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|\mathcal{T}^{N-1} \nabla\left(a^{\varepsilon, m} w_{\mathrm{R}} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{N-1} \nabla\left(a^{\varepsilon, m} w_{\mathrm{I}}^{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \lesssim \varepsilon^{-6} \mathfrak{E}_{N}^{2}, \\
& \left\|\mathcal{T}^{N-1} \nabla\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}^{3}, w_{\mathrm{I}}^{3}, w_{\mathrm{R}}^{2} w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{R}} w_{\mathrm{I}}^{2}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} \lesssim\left(\varepsilon^{-4} \mathfrak{E}_{N}\right)^{2} \mathfrak{E}_{N}
\end{aligned}
$$

As a result, it comes out

$$
\varepsilon^{-2} \sum_{j=0}^{N-1}\left(\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} \nabla \operatorname{Re} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}+\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} \nabla \operatorname{Im} Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w})\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2}\right) \lesssim \varepsilon^{-8} \mathfrak{E}_{N}^{2}+\varepsilon^{-10} \mathfrak{E}_{N}^{3}
$$

Along with (9.37), we obtain (9.19). This completes the proof of Lemma 9.2.
Now we are in a position to complete the proof of Theorem 3.2.
Proof of Theorem 3.2. In order to get the second order full derivatives of ( $w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}$ ), we may make use of the system (9.25) for $j=0,1,2$. In fact, according to the $w_{\mathrm{R}}$ equation of (9.25), we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\varepsilon^{2}\left\|\Delta\left(\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} & \lesssim \varepsilon\left\|\partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\varepsilon\left\|\mathcal{S}_{u^{\varepsilon, m}}\left(\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\| \mathcal{T}^{j} \operatorname{Im}\left(Q^{\varepsilon}(\mathfrak{w}) \|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right. \\
& +\left\|\left(\frac{\varepsilon^{2}}{2} \frac{\Delta a^{\varepsilon, m}}{a^{\varepsilon, m}}+\varepsilon^{m+2} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right) \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\varepsilon^{m+2}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j} r_{\varphi}^{m}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|R_{\partial_{t}, 1, j}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thanks to (8.2), (9.30) and (9.37), we get, by applying Lemmas 8.1 and 8.2, that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\varepsilon^{2}\left\|\Delta\left(\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \lesssim & \lesssim \varepsilon \partial_{t} \mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}} \|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\varepsilon^{-4} \mathcal{E}_{4}^{2}\left(1+\varepsilon^{-2} \mathcal{E}_{4}\right) \\
& +\mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}} \varepsilon^{m+1}+\sum_{\ell=0}^{j}\left(\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\varepsilon\left\|\mathcal{T}^{\ell}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{H^{1}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

from which and Proposition 3.6, we infer

$$
\sum_{j=0}^{2}\left\|\Delta\left(\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{L_{T_{0}}^{\infty}\left(L_{+}^{2}\right)} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}} \varepsilon^{m-1}
$$

The same estimate holds for $\Delta\left(\mathcal{T}^{j} w_{\mathrm{R}}\right)$, and then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{j=0}^{2}\left\|\Delta \mathcal{T}^{j}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{L_{T_{0}}^{\infty}\left(L_{+}^{2}\right)} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}} \varepsilon^{m-1} \tag{9.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

While it follows from Proposition 3.6 that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{j=0}^{3}\left\|\mathcal{T}^{j}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{L_{T_{0}}^{\infty}\left(H^{1}\right)} \lesssim \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}} \varepsilon^{m} \tag{9.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us now turn to estimate $\|\mathfrak{w}\|_{W^{1, \infty}}$ for $\mathfrak{w}$ given by (3.18). We first deduce from (9.34) and (9.35) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|\mathfrak{w}\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}} \leq\left\|w_{\mathrm{R}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}+\left\|w_{\mathrm{I}}\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}} \leq C \varepsilon^{-2} \mathfrak{E}_{4}^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq C \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}} \varepsilon^{m-1} \tag{9.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

On the other hand, we deduce from (9.33) that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \|\nabla f\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2}=\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2}+\left\|\partial_{z} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2} \\
& \quad \lesssim\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} f\right\|_{H^{1}}\left\|\left(1+\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right) \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} f\right\|_{H^{1}}+\left\|\partial_{z} f\right\|_{H^{1}}\left\|\left(1+\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right) \partial_{z} f\right\|_{H^{1}},
\end{aligned}
$$

which along with the fact that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\partial_{z} f\right\|_{H^{1}} & \lesssim\|\nabla f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{z} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\partial_{z}^{2} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}} \\
& \lesssim\|f\|_{H^{1}}+\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} f\right\|_{H^{1}}+\|\Delta f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

ensures that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \|\nabla f\|_{L_{+}^{\infty}}^{2} \lesssim\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} f\right\|_{H^{1}}\left\|\left(1+\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right) \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} f\right\|_{H^{1}}+\left(\|f\|_{H^{1}}+\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} f\right\|_{H^{1}}+\|\Delta f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2} f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right) \\
& \quad \times\left(\left\|\left(1+\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right) f\right\|_{H^{1}}+\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}\left(1+\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right) f\right\|_{H^{1}}+\left\|\Delta\left(1+\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right) f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}+\left\|\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\left(1+\nabla_{\mathrm{h}}^{2}\right) f\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right) \\
& \lesssim \\
& \\
& \\
& \\
& \sum_{j=0}^{3}\|\mathcal{T} f\|_{H^{1}}^{2}+\sum_{j=0}^{2}\|\Delta \mathcal{T} f\|_{L_{+}^{2}}^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, we obtain from (9.40) and (9.41) that for any $t \in\left[0, T_{0}\right]$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|\nabla \mathfrak{w}(t)\|_{L^{\infty}} & \leq\left\|\nabla w_{\mathrm{R}}(t)\right\|_{L^{\infty}}+\left\|\nabla w_{\mathrm{I}}(t)\right\|_{L^{\infty}} \\
& \leq C\left(\sum_{j=0}^{3}\left\|\mathcal{T}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{H^{1}}+\sum_{j=0}^{2}\left\|\Delta \mathcal{T}\left(w_{\mathrm{R}}, w_{\mathrm{I}}\right)\right\|_{L_{+}^{2}}\right) \\
& \leq C \mathcal{E}_{0}^{\frac{1}{2}} \varepsilon^{m-1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

This together with (9.42) ensures (3.21). This ends the proof of Theorem 3.2.

Appendix A. The source terms $F_{k}$ In (2.22) and $G_{k}$ In (2.23)
Indeed we observe from (2.13) that

$$
\begin{align*}
F_{k} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} & -\partial_{t} A_{k}-\sum_{\ell=0}^{k} F_{1, \ell}-\sum_{\ell=2}^{k+1} F_{2, \ell}-\sum_{\ell=1}^{k} F_{3, \ell}-\sum_{\ell=1}^{k+1} F_{4, \ell}+\sum_{\substack{\ell_{1}+\ell_{2}=k-1 \\
\ell_{1}+\ell_{2}+j=k \\
2 \leq j \leq k}} F_{6, \ell_{1}, \ell_{2}, j}-\sum_{\substack{\ell_{1}+\ell_{1}, \ell_{2} \\
2 \leq j \leq k=k+1}} F_{7, \ell_{1}, \ell_{2}, j}-\sum_{\substack{\ell_{1}+\ell_{2}+j=k+2 \\
2 \leq j \leq k+2}} F_{8, \ell_{1}, \ell_{2}, j} \\
& -\sum_{2 \leq j} \tag{A.1}
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
& F_{1, \ell} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{\ell} \cdot \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} A_{k-\ell}+\frac{A_{\ell}}{2}\left(\Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{k-\ell}+\overline{\Delta \varphi_{k-\ell}}\right)+\overline{\nabla_{y} \varphi \ell} \cdot \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} A_{k-\ell}+\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{\ell} \cdot \overline{\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} a_{k-\ell}} \\
& \\
& \quad+\frac{\overline{a_{\ell}}}{2} \Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{k-\ell}+Z\left(\overline{\partial_{z}^{2} \varphi_{\ell}} \partial_{Z} A_{k-\ell}+\partial_{Z} \Phi_{\ell} \overline{\partial_{z}^{2} a_{k-\ell}}\right)+\frac{Z^{2}}{2} \frac{\partial_{z}^{2} a_{\ell}}{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} \Phi_{k-\ell}, \\
& F_{2, \ell} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{\ell} \partial_{Z} A_{k+2-\ell}, \quad F_{3, \ell} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \frac{1}{2}\left(A_{\ell}+\overline{a_{\ell}}\right) \partial_{Z}^{2} \Phi_{k+2-\ell},
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_{4, \ell} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \overline{\partial_{z} \varphi_{\ell}} \partial_{Z} A_{k+1-\ell}+\partial_{Z} \Phi_{\ell} \overline{\partial_{z} a_{k+1-\ell}}+ & Z \frac{\overline{\partial_{z} a_{k+1-\ell}}}{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} \Phi_{\ell} \\
F_{5, \ell_{1}, \ell_{2}} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} Z\left(\overline{\nabla_{y} \partial_{z} \varphi_{\ell_{1}}} \cdot \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} A_{\ell_{2}}+\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{\ell_{1}} \cdot \overline{\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{z} a_{\ell_{2}}}\right. & \left.+\frac{\overline{\partial_{z} a_{\ell_{1}}}}{2} \Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{\ell_{2}}+\frac{A_{\ell_{1}}}{2} \overline{\Delta \partial_{z} \varphi_{\ell_{2}}}\right) \\
& +\frac{Z^{2}}{2}\left(\overline{\partial_{z}^{3} \varphi_{\ell_{1}}} \partial_{Z} A_{\ell_{2}}+\partial_{Z} \Phi_{\ell_{1}} \overline{\partial_{z}^{3} a_{\ell_{2}}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& F_{6, \ell_{1}, \ell_{2}, j} \stackrel{\operatorname{def}}{=} \frac{Z^{j}}{j!}\left(\overline{\nabla_{y} \partial_{z}^{j} \varphi_{\ell_{1}}} \cdot \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} A_{\ell_{2}}+\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{\ell_{1}} \cdot \overline{\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{z}^{j} a_{\ell_{2}}}+\overline{\frac{\partial_{z}^{j} a_{\ell_{1}}}{2}} \Delta_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{\ell_{2}}+\frac{A_{\ell_{1}}}{2} \overline{\Delta \partial_{z}^{j} \varphi_{\ell_{2}}}\right), \\
& \left.F_{7, \ell_{1}, \ell_{2}, j} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \frac{Z^{j}}{j!} \overline{\left(\partial_{z}^{j+1} \varphi_{\ell_{1}}\right.} \partial_{Z} A_{\ell_{2}}+\partial_{Z} \Phi_{\ell_{1}} \overline{\partial_{z}^{j+1} a_{\ell_{2}}}\right), \quad F_{8, \ell_{1}, \ell_{2}, j} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \frac{Z^{j}}{j!} \frac{\partial_{z}^{j} a_{\ell_{1}}}{2} \partial_{Z}^{2} \Phi_{\ell_{2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Whereas we observe from (2.14) that

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left.G_{k} \stackrel{\text { def }}{=} \sum_{\substack{\ell_{1}+\ell_{2}+j=k+1 \\
0 \leq \ell_{1} \leq k}} \frac{Z^{j}}{j!} \overline{\left(\partial_{z}^{j} a_{\ell_{1}}\right.} \partial_{t} \Phi_{\ell_{2}}+A_{\ell_{1}} \overline{\partial_{t} \partial_{z}^{j} \varphi_{\ell_{2}}}\right)+\sum_{\ell=0}^{k} A_{\ell} \partial_{t} \Phi_{k+1-\ell} \\
& +\sum_{\substack{\ell_{1}+\ell_{2}+\ell_{3}+j_{1}+j_{2}=k+1}} \frac{Z^{j_{1}+j_{2}}}{j_{1}!j_{2}!}\left(\overline{\partial_{z}^{j_{1}} a_{\ell_{1}} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{z}^{j_{2}} \varphi_{\ell_{2}}} \cdot \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{\ell_{3}}\right) \\
& +\sum_{\substack{\ell_{1}+\ell_{2}+\ell_{3}+j_{1}+j_{2}=k+1 \\
0 \leq \ell_{1} \leq k}} \frac{Z^{j_{1}+j_{2}}}{j_{1}!j_{2}!} A_{\ell_{1}\left(\frac{1}{2} \overline{\nabla \partial_{z}^{j_{1}} \varphi_{\ell_{2}}} \cdot \overline{\nabla \partial_{z}^{j_{2}} \varphi_{\ell_{3}}}+3 \overline{\partial_{z}^{j_{1}} a_{\ell_{2}} \partial_{z}^{j_{2}} a_{\ell_{3}}}\right)}^{\left.+\sum_{\substack{\ell_{1}+\ell_{2}+\ell_{3}+j_{1}+j_{2}=k+2 \\
1 \leq \ell_{3} \leq k+1}} \frac{Z^{j_{1}+j_{2}}}{j_{1}!j_{2}!} \overline{\left(\partial_{z}^{j_{1}} a_{\ell_{1}} \partial_{z}^{j_{2}+1} \varphi_{\ell_{2}}\right.} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{\ell_{3}}\right)} \\
& \left.+\sum_{\substack{\ell_{1}+\ell_{2}+\ell_{3}+j=k+1 \\
0 \leq \ell_{1} \leq k \leq}} \frac{Z^{j}}{j!} A_{\ell_{1}} \overline{\left(\nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \partial_{z}^{j} \varphi_{\ell_{2}}\right.} \cdot \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{\ell_{3}}\right)+\sum_{\ell_{1}+\ell_{2}+\ell_{3}+j=k+1} \frac{Z^{j}}{j!} \frac{Z_{z}^{j} a_{\ell_{1}}}{2} \nabla_{\mathrm{h}} \Phi_{\ell_{2}} \cdot \nabla_{h} \Phi_{\ell_{3}}  \tag{A.2}\\
& +\sum_{\substack{\ell_{1}+\ell_{2}+\ell_{3}+j=k+1 \\
0 \leq \ell_{1}, \ell_{2} \leq k}} \frac{Z^{j}}{j!} \overline{3 \partial_{z}^{j} a_{\ell_{1}}} A_{\ell_{2}} A_{\ell_{3}}+\sum_{\substack{\ell_{1}+\ell_{2}+\ell_{3}+j=k+2 \\
0 \leq \ell_{1} \leq k, 1 \leq \ell_{3} \leq k+1}} \frac{Z^{j}}{j!} A_{\ell_{1}}^{\partial_{z}^{j+1} \varphi_{\ell_{2}} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{\ell_{3}}} \\
& +\sum_{\substack{\ell_{1}+\ell_{2}+\ell_{3}+j=k+3 \\
1 \leq \ell_{2}+\ell_{3} \leq k+1}} \frac{Z^{j}}{j!} \frac{\partial_{z}^{j} a_{\ell_{1}}}{2} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{\ell_{2}} \partial_{Z} \Phi_{\ell_{3}}-\frac{1}{2} \Delta_{\mathrm{h}} A_{k-1} \cdot
\end{align*}
$$

## Appendix B. The proof of Lemma 4.1

Proof of Lemma 4.1. We split the proof of (4.7) into the following cases:

- When $k<s-\frac{3}{2}$. In this case, $s-k>\frac{3}{2}$, so that $H^{s-k}\left(\mathbb{R}_{+}^{3}\right)$ is an algebra. As a result, it comes out

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\partial_{t}^{k}(f g)(t)\right\|_{H^{s-k}} & \lesssim \sum_{\ell=0}^{k}\left\|\partial_{t}^{\ell} f(t) \partial_{t}^{k-\ell} g(t)\right\|_{H^{s-k}} \\
& \lesssim \sum_{\ell=0}^{k}\left\|\partial_{t}^{\ell} f(t)\right\|_{H^{s-k}}\left\|\partial_{t}^{k-\ell} g(t)\right\|_{H^{s-k}} \\
& \lesssim \sum_{\ell=0}^{k}\|f(t)\|_{W^{s+\ell-k}}\|g(t)\|_{W^{s-\ell}} \lesssim\|f(t)\|_{W^{s}}\|g(t)\|_{W^{s}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

- When $k=[s]-1 \geq s-\frac{3}{2}$. We first observe that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|f g\|_{H^{\tau}} \lesssim\|f\|_{H^{\tau}}\|g\|_{H^{2}} \quad \forall \tau \in[0,2) . \tag{B.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

The proof of the above inequality can be obtained by first extend the function to the whole space and then using the law of product in the classical Sobolev space (see [3]). We skip the details here.

When $[s] \geq 3$, we get, by applying (B.1), that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\partial_{t}^{[s]-1}(f g)(t)\right\|_{H^{s+1-[s]}} & \lesssim\left\|\partial_{t}^{[s]-1} f(t) g(t)\right\|_{H^{s+1-[s]}}+\left\|f(t) \partial_{t}^{[s]-1} g(t)\right\|_{H^{s+1-[s]}} \\
& +\sum_{\ell=1}^{[s]-2}\left\|\partial_{t}^{\ell} f(t) \partial_{t}^{[s]-1-\ell} g(t)\right\|_{H^{s+1-[s]}} \\
& \lesssim\left\|\partial_{t}^{[s]-1} f(t)\right\|_{H^{s+1-[s]}}\|g(t)\|_{H^{2}}+\|f(t)\|_{H^{2}}\left\|\partial_{t}^{[s]-1} g(t)\right\|_{H^{s+1-[s]}} \\
& +\sum_{\ell=1}^{[s]-2}\left\|\partial_{t}^{\ell} f(t)\right\|_{H^{2}}\left\|\partial_{t}^{[s]-1-\ell} g(t)\right\|_{H^{s+1-[s]}} \\
& \lesssim\|f(t)\|_{W^{s}}\|g(t)\|_{H^{2}}+\|f(t)\|_{H^{2}}\|g(t)\|_{W^{s}}+\sum_{\ell=1}^{[s]-2}\|f(t)\|_{W^{\ell+2}}\|g(t)\|_{W^{s-\ell}} \\
& \lesssim\|f(t)\|_{W^{s}}\|g(t)\|_{W^{s}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The case for $[s]=2$ can be proved along the same line.

- When $k=[s]$. We first recall the following law of product in Sobolev space from [3]

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\|f g\|_{s_{1}+s_{2}-\frac{3}{2}} \leq C\|f\|_{H^{s_{1}}}\|g\|_{H^{s_{2}}} \quad \text { if } \quad s_{1}, s_{2} \in\right] 0,3 / 2[ \tag{B.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the case when $s-[s] \in] 0, \frac{1}{2}[$, we get, by applying (B.2), that

$$
\|f g\|_{H^{s-[s]}} \lesssim\|f g\|_{H^{\frac{1}{2}}} \lesssim\|f\|_{H^{1}}\|g\|_{H^{1}}
$$

Then applying the above inequality and (B.1) yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\partial_{t}^{[s]}(f g)(t)\right\|_{H^{s-[s]}} \lesssim & \left\|\partial_{t}^{[s]} f(t) g(t)\right\|_{H^{s-[s]}}+\left\|f(t) \partial_{t}^{[s]} g(t)\right\|_{H^{s-[s]}}+\sum_{\ell=1}^{[s]-1}\left\|\partial_{t}^{\ell} f(t) \partial_{t}^{[s]-\ell} g(t)\right\|_{H^{s-[s]}} \\
& \lesssim\left\|\partial_{t}^{[s]} f(t)\right\|_{H^{s-[s]}}\|g(t)\|_{H^{2}}+\|f(t)\|_{H^{2}}\left\|\partial_{t}^{[s]} g(t)\right\|_{H^{s-[s]}} \\
& +\sum_{\ell=1}^{[s]-1}\left\|\partial_{t}^{\ell} f(t)\right\|_{H^{1}}\left\|\partial_{t}^{[s]-\ell} g(t)\right\|_{H^{1}} \\
& \lesssim\|f(t)\|_{W^{s}}\|g(t)\|_{H^{2}}+\|f(t)\|_{H^{2}}\|g(t)\|_{W^{s}}+\sum_{\ell=1}^{[s]-1}\|f(t)\|_{W^{\ell+1}}\|g(t)\|_{W^{s-\ell+1}} \\
& \lesssim\|f(t)\|_{W^{s}}\|g(t)\|_{W^{s}}
\end{aligned}
$$

In the case when $s-[s] \in] \frac{1}{2}, 1[$, we get, by applying (B.2), that

$$
\|f g\|_{H^{s-[s]}} \lesssim\|f g\|_{H^{2(s-[s])-\frac{1}{2}}} \lesssim\|f\|_{H^{s-[s]+\frac{1}{2}}}\|g\|_{H^{s-[s]+\frac{1}{2}}} .
$$

Applying the above inequality gives rise to

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{\ell=1}^{[s]-1}\left\|\partial_{t}^{\ell} f(t) \partial_{t}^{[s]-\ell} g(t)\right\|_{H^{s-[s]}} & \lesssim \sum_{\ell=1}^{[s]-1}\left\|\partial_{t}^{\ell} f(t)\right\|_{H^{s-[s]+\frac{1}{2}}}\left\|\partial_{t}^{[s]-\ell} g(t)\right\|_{H^{s-[s]+\frac{1}{2}}} \\
& \lesssim \sum_{\ell=1}^{[s]-1}\|f(t)\|_{W^{s-[s]+\ell+\frac{1}{2}}}\|g(t)\|_{W^{s-\ell+\frac{1}{2}}} \\
& \lesssim\|f(t)\|_{W^{s}}\|g(t)\|_{W^{s}}
\end{aligned}
$$

By summing up the above estimates, we obtain (4.7). This completes the proof of Lemma 4.1.

Acknowledgments. G. Gui is supported in part by the National Natural Science Foundation of China under the Grant 11571279. P. Zhang is partially supported by the National Natural Science Foundation of China under Grants 11688101 and 11371347, Morningside Center of Mathematics of The Chinese Academy of Sciences and innovation grant from National Center for Mathematics and Interdisciplinary Sciences.

## References

[1] T. Alazard and R. Carles, Loss of regularity for supercritical nonlinear Schrödinger equations, Math. Ann., 343 (2009), 397-420.
[2] T. Alazard and R. Carles, Supercritical geometric optics for nonlinear Schrödinger equations, Arch. Ration. Mech. Anal., 194 (2009), 315-347.
[3] H. Bahouri, J.-Y. Chemin and R. Danchin, Fourier Analysis and Nonlinear Partial Differential Equations, Grundlehren der mathematischen Wissenschaften, 343, Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg, 2011.
[4] Y. Brenier, Convergence of the Vlasov-Poisson system to the incompressible Euler equations, Comm. Partial Differential Equations, 25 (2000), 737-754.
[5] R. Carles, Semi-classical analysis for nonlinear Schrödinger equations. World Scientific Publishing Co. Pte. Ltd., Hackensack, NJ, 2008.
[6] D. Chiron and F. Rousset, Geometric optics and boundary layers for nonlinear-Schrödinger equations, Commun. Math. Phys., 288 (2009) 503-546.
[7] J. Cousteix and J. Mauss, Asymptotic analysis and boundary layers, Springer, Berlin, 2007.
[8] D. Gérard-Varet, Y. Maekawa and N. Masmoudi, Gevrey stability of Prandtl expansions for 2-dimensional Navier-Stokes flows, Duke Math. J., 167 (2018), 2531-2631.
[9] T. Frisch, Y. Pomeau and S. Rica, Transition to dissipation in a model of superflow, Phys. Rev. Lett., 69 (1992), 1644-1647.
[10] P. Gérard, Remarques sur l'analyse semi-classique de l'équation de Schrödinger non linéaire, Séminaire sur les équations aux Dérivées Partielles, 1992-1993, Exp. No. XIII, 13 pp., École Polytech., Palaiseau, 1993.
[11] E. Grenier, Semiclassical limit of the nonlinear Schrödinger equation in small time, Proc. Amer. Math. Soc., 126 (1998), 523-530.
[12] C. Josserand and Y. Pomeau, Nonlinear aspects of the theory of Bose-Einstein condensates, Nonlinearity, 14 (2001), R25-R62.
[13] Y. Guo and T. Nguyen, Prandtl boundary layer expansions of steady Navier-Stokes flows over a moving plate, Ann. PDE, 3 (2017), Art. 10, 58 pp.
[14] L. D. Landau and E. M. Lifschtiz, Lehrbuch der Theoretischen Physik III. Quantenmechanik, Academie, Berlin, 1985.
[15] F. Lin and P. Zhang, On the semiclassical limit of Gross-Pitaevski equations in an exterior domain, Arch. Ration. Mech. Anal., 179 (2005), 79-107.
[16] P. L. Lions and T. Paul, Sur les mesures de Wigner, Rev. Mat. Iberoamericana, 9 (1993), 553-618.
[17] O. A. Oleinik and V. N. Samokhin, Mathematical models in boundary layer theory. Applied Mathematics and Mathematical Computation, 15. Chapman \& Hall/CRC, Boca Raton, FL, 1999.
[18] C. T. Pham, C. Nore and M. E. Brachet, Boundary layers and emitted excitations in nonlinear Schrödinger superflow past a disk, Phys. D, 210 (2005), 203-226.
[19] S. Serfaty, Mean field limits of the Gross-Pitaevskii and parabolic Ginzburg-Landau equations, J. Amer. Math. Soc., 30 (2017), 713-768.
[20] P. Zhang, Wigner measure and the semi-classical limit of Schrödinger-Poisson equation, SIAM J. Math. Anal., 34 (2002), 700-718.
[21] P. Zhang, On the semiclassical limit of nonlinear Schrödinger equations (II), J. Partial Differential Equations, 15 (2002), 83-96.
[22] P. Zhang, Wigner Measure and Semiclassical Limit of Nonlinear Schrödinger equations, Courant Lecture Notes in Mathematics, 17. Courant Institute of Mathematical Sciences, New York; American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2008.
(G. Gui) School of Mathematics, Northwest University, Xi’an 710069, China.

E-mail address: glgui@amss.ac.cn
(P. Zhang) Academy of Mathematics \& Systems Science and Hua Loo-Keng Key Laboratory of Mathematics, The Chinese Academy of Sciences, Beijing 100190, China, and School of Mathematical Sciences, University of Chinese Academy of Sciences, Beijing 100049, China.

E-mail address: zp@amss.ac.cn

